

World Journal of *Orthopedics*

World J Orthop 2013 July 18; 4(3): 100-160



Editorial Board

2010-2014

The *World Journal of Orthopedics* Editorial Board consists of 435 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in orthopedics. They are from 42 countries, including Argentina (1), Australia (18), Austria (5), Bangladesh (1), Belgium (2), Brazil (4), Canada (11), China (43), Croatia (2), Denmark (2), Egypt (5), Finland (3), France (4), Germany (14), Greece (16), Hungary (1), India (12), Iran (4), Ireland (2), Israel (13), Italy (24), Japan (23), Morocco (1), Netherlands (14), New Zealand (1), Norway (4), Portugal (1), Qatar (1), Saudi Arabia (4), Serbia (3), Singapore (4), Slovenia (1), South Korea (21), Spain (5), Sri Lanka (1), Sweden (4), Switzerland (8), Thailand (3), Tunisia (2), Turkey (7), United Kingdom (17), and United States (123).

EDITOR-IN-CHIEFBao-Gan Peng, *Beijing***STRATEGY ASSOCIATE****EDITORS-IN-CHIEF**

Jenni M Buckley, *San Francisco*
Vijay K Goel, *Toledo*
James F Griffith, *Hong Kong*
Thomas W Kaminski, *Newark*
Enrico Pola, *Rome*
Masato Takao, *Tokyo*

GUEST EDITORIAL BOARD MEMBERS

Chih-Hwa Chen, *Keelung*
Ruei-Ming Chen, *Taipei*
Yen-Jen Chen, *Taichung*
Pang-Hsin Hsieh, *Taoyuan*
Kuo-Chin Huang, *Chia-Yi*
Tung-Fu Huang, *Taipei*
Shao-Hung Hung, *Tungkang PingTung*
Chian-Her Lee, *Taipei*
Yih-Shiunn Lee, *Taichung*
Po-Chou Liliang, *Kaohsiung*
Feng-Huei Lin, *Taipei*
Jiu-jenq Lin, *Taipei*
Ko-Hsiu Lu, *Taichung*
Fu-Chan Wei, *Taoyuan*
Ta-Sen Wei, *Changhua*
Chih-Shung Wong, *Taipei*
Jui-Tien Shih, *Taoyuan*
Chen Yuk-Kwan, *Kaohsiung*

MEMBERS OF THE EDITORIAL BOARD**Argentina**Martin Alejandro Buttaró, *Aires***Australia**

Gerald James Atkins, *Adelaide*
Gregory Ian Bain, *Adelaide*
Darren John Beales, *Atwell*
Belinda R Beck, *Gold Coast*
Adam Leigh Bryant, *Melbourne*
Changhai Ding, *Hobart*
Ashish Dhar Diwan, *Sydney*
Herwig Drobotz, *Mackay*
Melanie Franklyn, *Melbourne*
Rana Shane Hinman, *Melbourne*
Konstantin I Momot, *Brisbane*
George Samuel Murley, *Melbourne*
Michal E Schneider-Kolsky, *Clayton*
Jerzy M Sikorski, *Perth*
Gordon L Slater, *Albury*
Lucian Bogdan Solomon, *Adelaide*
Mark Watsford, *Sydney*
Cory J Xian, *Adelaide*

**Austria**

Florian Kutscha-Lissberg, *Vienna*
Kevin Laudner, *Innsbruck*
Stefan Toegel, *Vienna*
Klemens Trieb, *Wels*
Heinz KL Winkler, *Wien*

**Bangladesh**Saidur Rahman Mashreky, *Dhaka***Belgium**Olivier Bruyere, *Liege*Hendrik Pieter Delpoort, *Sint Niklaas***Brazil**

Djalma José Fagundes, *São Paulo*
Francisco Bandeira Farias, *Recife*
Eduardo Magalhaes, *São Paulo*
Luci F Teixeira-Salmela, *Minas Gerais*

**Canada**

Richard E Buckley, *Calgary*
Prince Francois, *Quebec*
Reggie Charles Hamdy, *Montreal*
Michael Anthony Hunt, *Columbia*
Richard Kremer, *Montreal*
Jean-Marc Mac-Thiong, *Montreal*
Fackson Mwale, *Montreal*
Vasileios Nikolaou, *Toronto*
Christy C Tomkins-Lane, *Calgary*
Robert E Turcotte, *Quebec*
Stephen D Waldman, *Kingston*

**China**

Yu-Ming Chen, *Guangzhou*
Wing-Hoi Cheung, *Hong Kong*
Hong-Bin Fan, *Xi'an*
Daniel YT Fong, *Hong Kong*
Li-Xin Guo, *Shenyang*
Xia Guo, *Hong Kong*
Xiong Guo, *Xi'an*
Lui-Tun Hing, *Hong Kong*
Jing Hu, *Chengdu*
Yong Hu, *Hong Kong*
Kai-Fu Huo, *Wuhan*

Xiang-Hang Luo, *Changsha*
 Zhuo-Jing Luo, *Xi'an*
 Marco YC Pang, *Hong Kong*
 Ling Qin, *Hong Kong*
 Jun Tan, *Shanghai*
 Ricky WK Wong, *Hong Kong*
 Tak-Chuen Wong, *Hong Kong*
 Hua-Zi Xu, *Wenzhou*
 Bin-Sheng Yu, *Guangzhou*
 Ge Zhang, *Hong Kong*
 Ming Zhang, *Hong Kong*
 Jian-Hua Zhao, *Chongqing*



Croatia

Robert Kolundzic, *Zgareb*
 Tomislav Smoljanovic, *Zagreb*



Denmark

Stig Brorson, *Copenhagen*
 Morten Tange Kristensen, *Copenhagen*



Egypt

Khaled M Emara, *Cairo*
 Mohamed Kenawey, *Sohag*
 Wael MT Koptan, *Cairo*
 Mahmoud Mahran, *Cairo*
 Elsayed I Elsayed Massoud, *Elghad*



Finland

Timo Järvelä, *Tampere*
 Yrjö T Konttinen, *Helsinki*
 Petri Sillanpaa, *Tampere*



France

Federico Canavese, *Ferrand*
 Jean-Alain Epinette, *Labuissiere*
 You Eric, *Paris*
 Sebastien Zilber, *Paris*



Germany

Stefan Grote, *Munich*
 Carl Haasper, *Hannover*
 Jorn Kircher, *Düsseldorf*
 Karsten Knobloch, *Hannover*
 Philipp Kobbe, *Aachen*
 Heinz Lohrer, *Main*
 Olaf Lorbach, *Homburg*
 Annegret Mündermann, *Radolfzell*
 Markus Regauer, *München*
 Volker Schoffl, *Bamberg*
 Arndt P Schulz, *Lübeck*
 Sebastian Seitz, *Hamburg*
 Lars Victor Baron von Engelhardt, *Bochum*
 Goetz Hannes Welsch, *Erlangen*



Greece

Evangelos C Alexopoulos, *Athens*

Stergioulas Thomas Apostolos, *Peloponnese*
 Constantinos D Apostolou, *Attiki*
 George C Babis, *Chaidari*
 Georgios I Drosos, *Alexandroupolis*
 Christos Garnavos, *Athens*
 Panagiotis Korovessis, *Patras*
 Marios Georgios Lykissas, *Ioannina*
 Dimitrios N Lyras, *Alexandroupolis*
 Konstantinos N Malizos, *Larissa*
 Yannis Manios, *Athens*
 Nikolaos G Papadimitriou, *Thessaloniki*
 Vassilis Paschalis, *Trikala*
 Lazaros I Sakkas, *Larissa*
 Haris S Vasiliadis, *Ioannina*
 Marianna Vlychou, *Thessaly*



Hungary

Andor Sebestyén, *Pécs*



India

Vaibhav Bagaria, *Ghaziabad*
 Kemmannu Vikram Bhat, *Hubli*
 Antony Gomes, *Calcutta*
 Shah Alam Khan, *New Delhi*
 Thomas Joseph Kishen, *Bangalore*
 Pankaj Kumar, *Andhra Pradesh Pin*
 Pramod V Lokhande, *Pune*
 Devdatta Suhas Neogi, *Mumbai*
 Mohamed Shafi, *Tamil Nadu State*
 Kunal Sharan, *Lucknow*
 Vidyadhara Srinivasa, *Karnataka*
 Divya Vohora, *New Delhi*



Iran

Masood Mazaheri, *Isfahan*
 Sayed Javad Mousavi, *Tehran*
 Hossein Negahban, *Ahvaz*
 Ali Razmkon, *Shiraz*



Ireland

Joseph S Butler, *Dublin*
 Eamonn Delahun, *Dublin*



Israel

Itai A Bab, *Jerusalem*
 Itzhak Binderman, *Tel Aviv*
 Alexander Blankstein, *Ramat Hasharon*
 Itay Fenichel, *Udim*
 Aharon Finestone, *Reut*
 Amir Herman, *Ramat-Gan*
 Dror Lakstein, *Holon*
 Yocheved Laufer, *Haifa*
 Youssef Maher Masharawi, *Tel Aviv*
 Francis B Mimouni, *Jerusalem*
 Jacob Kobi Peleg, *Tel Hashomer*
 Nahum Rosenberg, *Haifa*
 Yehuda Ullmann, *Haifa*



Italy

Saverio Affatato, *Bologna*

Patrizia D Amelio, *Torino*
 Giuseppe Banfi, *Milano*
 Angelo Cacchio, *L'Aquila*
 Giuseppe M Campo, *Messina*
 Marco Crostelli, *Rome*
 Pasquale De Negri, *Rionero in Vulture*
 Alessandro de Stefano, *Bari*
 Alberto Deganello, *Florence*
 Costantino Errani, *Bologna*
 Alessandro Geraci, *Feltre*
 Andrea Giusti, *Genova*
 Alberto Gobbi, *Milan*
 Donatella Lippi, *Florence*
 Marcello Maggio, *Parma*
 Gian Luigi Marseglia, *Milano*
 Monica Mattioli-Belmonte, *Ancona*
 Claudia Mazzà, *Rome*
 Marco Monticone, *Lissone*
 Raoul Saggini, *Chieti*
 Umberto Tarantino, *Rome*
 Marco Giuseppe Angelo Teli, *Bergamo*
 Tomaso Villa, *Milano*



Japan

Yoichi Aota, *Yokohama*
 Jun Iwamoto, *Tokyo*
 Shuichi Kaneyama, *Kobe*
 Yuichi Kasai, *Tsu city*
 Shigeru Kobayashi, *Fukui*
 Tomihisa Koshino, *Yokohama*
 Nobuyuki Kumahashi, *Shimane-ken*
 Makoto Makishima, *Tokyo*
 Toru Maruyama, *Saitama*
 Kanji Mori, *Otsu*
 Satoshi Mori, *Hamamatsu Shizuoka*
 Ryuichi Morishita, *Suita*
 Yasuharu Nagano, *Saitama*
 Hideki Nagashima, *Tottori*
 Mitsuo Ochi, *Hiroshima*
 Akio Sakamoto, *Fukuoka*
 Yasuaki Tokuhashi, *Tokyo*
 Toshimasa Uemura, *Ibaraki*
 Toru Yamaguchi, *Izumo-shi*
 Hisataka Yasuda, *Nagahama*
 Takafumi Yoshikawa, *Nara*
 Tadahiko Yotsumoto, *Higashisaka-city*



Morocco

Abdellah El Maghraoui, *Rabat*



Netherlands

Taco Gosens, *Tilburg*
 PE Huijsmans, *The Hague*
 Paul C Jutte, *Groningen*
 Claudine JC Lamoth, *Groningen*
 Esther Maria Maartje, *Rotterdam*
 RGHH Nelissen, *Leiden*
 Rob GHH Nelissen, *Leiden*
 Christiaan JA van Bergen, *Amsterdam*
 Michel van den Bekerom, *Amsterdam*
 PM van der Kraan, *Nijmegen*
 BCH van der Wal, *Amersfoort*

TM van Raaij, *Groningen*
Barend J Van Royen, *Amsterdam*
JJ Verlaan, *Utrecht*



New Zealand

Doug King, *Lower Hutt*



Norway

Jan Oxholm Gordeladze, *Oslo*
Anne Keller, *Oslo*
Gunnar Knutsen, *Tromsø*
Inigo Martinez, *Tromsø*



Portugal

João F Mano, *Guimarães*



Qatar

Cristiano Eirale, *Doha*



Saudi Arabia

Sultan Abdulaziz Al Mubarak, *Riyadh*
Einas Al-Eisa, *Riyadh*
Mir Sadat Ali, *AlKhobar*
Mohamed Zamzam, *Riyadh*



Serbia

Radica Dunjic, *Belgrade*
Miroslav Z Milankov, *Novi Sad*
Zoran Vukasinovic, *Serbia*



Singapore

Hwan Tak Hee, *Singapore*
V Prem Kumar, *Singapore*
Anselm Mak, *Singapore*
Dongan Wang, *Singapore*



Slovenia

Matjaz Sajovic, *Celje*



South Korea

Seung-Hoon Baek, *Daegu*
Gun Choi, *Seoul*
Kook Jin Chung, *Seoul*
Jae Taek Hong, *Suwon*
Dae-Geun Jeon, *Seoul*
Hyun Woo Kim, *Seoul*
Jae Kwang Kim, *Seoul*
Seok Woo Kim, *Gyeonggi*
Shin-Yoon Kim, *Daegu*
Young Hoon Kim, *Seoul*
Sang-Hun Ko, *Ulsan City*
Sung-Uk Kuh, *Seoul*

Jaebeom Lee, *Miryang*
Sang Ki Lee, *Daejeon*
Yong Seuk Lee, *Suwon*
Jin-Young Park, *Seoul*
Jong-Beom Park, *Kyunggi-do*
Yang-Sik Shin, *Seoul*
Eun Kyoo Song, *Jeonnam*
Paul S Sung, *Seoul*
Kyu Hyun Yang, *Seoul*



Spain

Enrique Gomez Barrena, *Madrid*
Francisco J Blanco Garcia, *Coruna*
Antonio Herrera, *Zaragoza*
Daniel Hernandez Vaquero, *Aviles*
Nuria Vilaboa, *Madrid*



Sri Lanka

Janaka Lenora, *Galle*



Sweden

Paul Ackermann, *Stockholm*
Jan G Jakobsson, *Stockholm*
Anna Nordström, *Umeå*
Ola Rolfson, *Mölnådal*



Switzerland

Achim Elfering, *Bern*
Peter Fennema, *Baar*
Bruno Fuchs, *Zürich*
Benjamin Gantenbein, *Bern*
Michael Hirschmann, *Basel*
Beat Knechtle, *St. Gallen*
Nicola A Maffiuletti, *Zurich*
Elyazid Mouhsine, *Lausanne*



Thailand

Sittisak Honsawek, *Bangkok*
Prachya Kongtawelert, *Chiang Mai*
Boonsin Tangtrakulwanich, *Songkla*



Tunisia

Abdelkader Krichen, *Sfax*
Lamia Rezgui-Marhouf, *Tunis*



Turkey

Bulent Daglar, *Ankara*
Serkan Erkan, *Manisa*
Serdar Kahraman, *Istanbul*
Akmer Mutlu, *Samanpazari Ankara*
Kemal NAS, *Diyarbakir*
Salih Ozgocmen, *Kayseri*
Haluk H Oztekin, *Izmir*



United Kingdom

Henry DE Atkinson, *London*

Abhijit Manohar Bhosale, *South Yorkshire*
Sarah Cartmell, *Manchester*
David Chesney, *Scotland*
Yogeesh D Kamat, *Surrey*
Vikas Khanduja, *Cambridge*
Ranjith Ravindran Kuzhupilly, *Basildon*
Hammad Malik, *Manchester*
Jitendra Mangwani, *Wiltshire*
Ali Mobasheri, *Sutton Bonington*
Tosan Okoro, *Bangor*
Hemant G Pandit, *Oxford*
Mathew Sewell, *Teddington*
Eleftherios Tsiridis, *London*
Charles Willis-Owen, *London*
Vikki Wyldie, *Bristol*
Wei-Ya Zhang, *Nottingham*



United States

Joseph A Abboud, *Philadelphia*
Matthew S Abrahams, *Portland*
David S Bailie, *Scottsdale*
B Sonny Bal, *Columbia*
Matthew J Beckman, *Richmond*
Inna Belfer, *Pittsburgh*
Angie Botto-van Bemden, *Lauderdale*
Srino Bharam, *New York*
Anil Bhave, *Baltimore*
Craig R Bottoni, *Honolulu*
Adam Matthew Brufsky, *Pittsburgh*
Lavjay Butani, *Sacramento*
Edmund Y S Chao, *Corona*
Chaoyang Chen, *Detroit*
R Tong Chuanhe, *Chicago*
Ock K Chun, *Storrs*
Christopher J Colloca, *Chandler*
Quanjun Cui, *Virginia*
Scott D Daffner, *Morgantown*
Nabanita S Datta, *Detroit*
Paul E Di Cesare, *Sacramento*
Clark Dickin, *Muncie*
Matthew B Dobbs, *Saint Louis*
Tammy L Haut Donahue, *Houghton*
Zhenfeng Duan, *Boston*
John S Early, *Dallas*
Jason C Eck, *Worcester*
Evan F Ekman, *Columbia*
Steven Howard Elder, *Mississippi*
John Elias, *Akron*
David A Fisher, *Indianapolis*
Michael Fredericson, *Redwood City*
Joel J Gagnier, *Ann Arbor*
Glen Michael Ginsburg, *Omaha*
Federico P Girardi, *New York*
Beril Gok, *Baltimore*
Ashraf S Gorgey, *Richmond*
David J Hak, *Denver*
Sam Hakki, *Bay Pines*
Sheri Hale, *Winchester*
Kyung Mo Han, *Washington*
James S Harrop, *Philadelphia*
Erin Hartigan, *Portland*
Brian Michael Haus, *Boston*
David L Helfet, *New York*
John H Hollman, *Rochester*
Adam H Hsieh, *College Park*
Johnny Huard, *Pittsburgh*
G Russell Huffman, *Philadelphia*
Mozammil Hussain, *Chesterfield*
Stefan Judex, *Stony Brook*

David Hanwuk Kim, *Boston*
Kee D Kim, *Sacramento*
Gary Krishnan, *Fishers*
Michael A Kuhn, *North Carolina*
Shrawan Kumar, *Fort Worth*
Monroe Laborde, *New Orleans*
Kevin Laudner, *Normal*
Bingyun Li, *Morgantown*
Xiao-Juan Li, *San Francisco*
Ye-Fu Li, *Boston*
Zhongyu John Li, *Winston-Salem*
Zong-Ming Li, *Cleveland*
Chuanju Liu, *New York*
Richard M Lovering, *Baltimore*
Raman C Mahabir, *Temple*
Aditya V Maheshwari, *Brooklyn*
Kenneth Allen Mann, *Syracuse*
Lyle Joseph Micheli, *Boston*
Subburaman Mohan, *Loma Linda*
Arash Momeni, *Palo Alto*
Nader D Nader, *Buffalo*
Rahul Kumar Nath, *Houston*
John Nyland, *Louisville*

Brett D Owens, *New York*
Dror Paley, *Florida*
George Papaioannou, *Milwaukee*
Evangelos Pappas, *Brooklyn*
Paul Park, *Ann Arbor*
Javad Parvizi, *Philadelphia*
Ming Pei, *Morgantown*
Juan A Pretell, *Philadelphia*
Mark D Price, *Worcester*
R Lor Randall, *Salt Lake City*
Bruce M Rothschild, *Kansas*
David P Roye JR, *New York*
Thomas A Russell, *Tennessee*
G James Sammarco, *Cincinnati*
Aaron David Sciascia, *Lexington*
Jason Scott Scibek, *Pittsburgh*
David M Selkowitz, *Pomona*
Hassan Serhan, *Raynham*
Chwan-Li Shen, *Lubbock*
Francis H Shen, *Charlottesville*
Sorin Siegler, *Philadelphia*
Karin Grävare Silbernagel, *Newark*
David H Song, *Chicago*

Nelson F SooHoo, *Los Angeles*
David Andrew Spiegel, *Philadelphia*
SPA Stawicki, *Columbus*
Marcus B Stone, *Highland*
Ann Marie Swank, *Louisville*
James S Thomas, *Athens*
R Shane Tubbs, *Birmingham*
Victoria M Virador, *Bethesda*
Bing Wang, *Pittsburgh*
Jeffrey C Wang, *Monica*
Wenbao Wang, *New York*
Terry L Whipple, *Richmond*
Savio LY Woo, *Pittsburgh*
Dane K Wukich, *Pittsburgh*
Masayoshi Yamaguchi, *Atlanta*
Feng-Chun Yang, *Indianapolis*
Shang-You Yang, *Wichita*
Subhashini Yaturu, *Albany*
Hiroki Yokota, *Troy*
Charalampos Zalavras, *Los Angeles*
Li-Qun Zhang, *Chicago*
Chunfeng Zhao, *Rochester*
Nigel Zheng, *Charlotte*

Contents

Quarterly Volume 4 Number 3 July 18, 2013

EDITORIAL

- 100 Trochanteric area pain, the result of a quartet of bursal inflammation
Rothschild B
- 103 Mechanical solution for a mechanical problem: Tennis elbow
Rothschild B
- 107 Use of intercostal nerves for different target neurotization in brachial plexus reconstruction
Lykissas MG, Kostas-Agnantis IP, Korompilias AV, Vekris MD, Beris AE
- 112 Cervical adjacent segment pathology following fusion: Is it due to fusion?
Rosenthal P, Kim KD

MINIREVIEWS

- 114 Orthopaedic perspective on bone metastasis
Molloy AP, O'Toole GC

BRIEF ARTICLE

- 120 Errors in visual estimation of flexion contractures during total knee arthroplasty
Jacobs CA, Christensen CP, Hester PW, Burandt DM, Sciascia AD
- 124 Biomechanical characteristics of bone in streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats: An *in-vivo* randomized controlled experimental study
Korres N, Tsiridis E, Pavlou G, Mitsoudis A, Perrea DN, Zombos AB
- 130 Olecranon anatomy: Use of a novel proximal interlocking screw for intramedullary nailing, a cadaver study
Küçükdurmaz F, Saglam N, Ağır İ, Sen C, Akpınar F
- 134 Comparison of straight median sternotomy and interlocking sternotomy with respect to biomechanical stability
Küçükdurmaz F, Ağır İ, Bezer M
- 139 Relationship of knowledge about osteoporosis with education level and life habits
Etemadifar MR, Nourian SM, Fereidan-Esfahani M, Shemshaki H, Nourbakhsh M, Zarezadeh A

-
- META-ANALYSIS** 144 Ponseti method compared with soft-tissue release for the management of clubfoot: A meta-analysis study
Lykissas MG, Crawford AH, Eismann EA, Tamai J
-
- CASE REPORT** 154 Profunda femoris artery pseudoaneurysm following revision for femoral shaft fracture nonunion
Valli F, Teli MGA, Innocenti M, Vercelli R, Prestamburgo D
- 157 Solid fusion after lumbosacral arthroplasty
Jang SH, Lee HY, Cho JY, Lee SH

APPENDIX I-V Instructions to authors

ABOUT COVER Editorial Board Member of *World Journal of Orthopedics*, KMarios-Nikolaos Lykissas, MD, PhD, Department of Spine and Scoliosis Surgery, Hospital for Special Surgery, Weil-Cornell University, 535 East 70th Street, New York, NY 10021, United States

AIM AND SCOPE *World Journal of Orthopedics (World J Orthop, WJO, online ISSN 2218-5836, DOI: 10.5312)* is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

WJO covers topics concerning arthroscopy, evidence-based medicine, epidemiology, nursing, sports medicine, therapy of bone and spinal diseases, bone trauma, osteoarthropathy, bone tumors and osteoporosis, minimally invasive therapy, diagnostic imaging. Priority publication will be given to articles concerning diagnosis and treatment of orthopedic diseases. The following aspects are covered: Clinical diagnosis, laboratory diagnosis, differential diagnosis, imaging tests, pathological diagnosis, molecular biological diagnosis, immunological diagnosis, genetic diagnosis, functional diagnostics, and physical diagnosis; and comprehensive therapy, drug therapy, surgical therapy, interventional treatment, minimally invasive therapy, and robot-assisted therapy.

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJO*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great basic and clinical significance.

INDEXING/ABSTRACTING *World Journal of Orthopedics* is now indexed in PubMed Central, PubMed, Digital Object Identifier, and Directory of Open Access Journals.

FLYLEAF I-IV Editorial Board

EDITORS FOR THIS ISSUE

Responsible Assistant Editor: *Xin-Xin Che*
Responsible Electronic Editor: *Shuai Ma*
Proofing Editor-in-Chief: *Lian-Sheng Ma*

Responsible Science Editor: *Xin-Xia Song*

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Orthopedics

ISSN
 ISSN 2218-5836 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
 November 18, 2010

FREQUENCY
 Quarterly

EDITOR-IN-CHIEF
Bao-Gan Peng, MD, PhD, Professor, Department of Spinal Surgery, General Hospital of Armed Police Force, 69 Yongding Road, Beijing 100039, China

EDITORIAL OFFICE
 Jin-Lei Wang, Director
 Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director

World Journal of Orthopedics
 Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center, No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District, Beijing 100025, China
 Telephone: +86-10-85381891
 Fax: +86-10-85381893
 E-mail: wjo@wjnet.com
<http://www.wjnet.com>

PUBLISHER
 Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited
 Flat C, 23/F, Lucky Plaza, 315-321 Lockhart Road, Wan Chai, Hong Kong, China
 Fax: +852-65557188
 Telephone: +852-31779906
 E-mail: bpgoffice@wjnet.com
<http://www.wjnet.com>

PUBLICATION DATE
 July 18, 2013

COPYRIGHT

© 2013 Baishideng. Articles published by this Open-Access journal are distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution Non-commercial License, which permits use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited, the use is non commercial and is otherwise in compliance with the license.

SPECIAL STATEMENT

All articles published in this journal represent the viewpoints of the authors except where indicated otherwise.

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS

Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjnet.com/2218-5836/g_info_20100722172650.htm

ONLINE SUBMISSION

<http://www.wjnet.com/esp/>

Trochanteric area pain, the result of a quartet of bursal inflammation

Bruce Rothschild

Bruce Rothschild, Department of Medicine, Northeast Ohio Medical University, Rootstown, OH 44272, United States
Bruce Rothschild, Biodiversity Institute, University of Kansas, Lawrence, KS 66045, United States

Author contributions: Rothschild B solely contributed to this paper.

Correspondence to: Bruce Rothschild, Professor, Department of Medicine, Northeast Ohio Medical University, 4209 State Route 44, Rootstown, OH 44272, United States. bmr@ku.edu
Telephone: +1-785-6151523 Fax: +1-785-5942691

Received: December 16, 2012 Revised: February 12, 2013

Accepted: March 21, 2013

Published online: July 18, 2013

Abstract

Bursitis is quite responsive to therapeutic intervention, once the afflicted area is accurately identified. This is especially notable for some hip complaints. Patients' use of the term "hip" can relate to anything from the low back to groin to lateral thigh pain. Trochanteric area surface localization of "hip" pain may afford an opportunity for immediate cure. Effectiveness of therapeutic intervention is predicated upon injection of not one or two, but all four peri-trochanteric bursa with a depot (minimally water-soluble) corticosteroid. The term trochanteric bursitis suggests that the inflammation is more focal than what is clinically observed. While easier to express, perhaps it is time to refer to inflammation in this area, naming all four affected bursae.

© 2013 Baishideng. All rights reserved.

Key words: Trochanter; Bursitis; Bursa; Hip; Injection; Corticosteroids; Dexamethasone; Triamcinolone

Core tip: The designation hip pain requires localization to identify effective treatment. Once tenderness is localized to the area of the greater trochanter, it is quite amenable to treatment. However, there are four bursa represented and injection of only one usually does not

resolve the problem. Injection of all four with a corticosteroid that is minimally water soluble is required.

Rothschild B. Trochanteric area pain, the result of a quartet of bursal inflammation. *World J Orthop* 2013; 4(3): 100-102 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-5836/full/v4/i3/100.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5312/wjo.v4.i3.100>

HIP PAIN

Bursitis is quite responsive to therapeutic intervention, once the afflicted area is accurately identified. This is especially notable for some hip complaints. Patients' use of the term "hip" can relate to anything from the low back to groin to lateral thigh pain^[1-6]. The affected area is typically identified by where the patient points. Lateral thigh localization suggests involvement of bursae in the vicinity of the greater trochanter^[7-15]. Pain on external rotation with abduction is highly suggestive of the diagnosis. Direct palpation of the greater trochanter is usually diagnostic, although slipping ilial-tibial band syndrome must be considered^[15] and of course, the bursae may rarely be infected (e.g., tuberculosis)^[16].

Non-operative orthopedics is a field in which results are typically expected in days (more commonly weeks or months) rather than producing the gratification of immediate and safe resolution of the problem that is so commonly the result of surgical intervention. One diagnosis that I find especially rewarding is that of involvement of peri-trochanteric bursae in individuals with "hip" pain. Such pathology has a female predominance. It is present unilaterally in 15% of women, 8.5% of men; bilaterally, in 6.6% of women, 1.9% of men^[17,18]. It is rewarding to both physician and patient, as it is especially responsive to injection of the appropriate bursae with triamcinolone and lidocaine^[19-23]. The lidocaine gives immediate relief of patient symptoms, confirming the diagnosis, while the

triamcinolone provides lasting relief. It is performed with a 22 gauge spinal (3-1/2 inch) needle and is sometimes performed under radiological guidance^[24]. This injection provides a depot corticosteroid effect, in contrast to the time-limited effect of dexamethasone, whose water solubility results in rapid systemic, rather than localized distribution. Passive movement of the hip through full range of motion subsequent to injection is critical to assure mobilization of the steroid throughout the bursae^[25]. This intervention is usually effective, even when it is a post-surgical event or in the presence of a leg length discrepancy^[26-28], although presence of lower extremity osteoarthritis reduces effectiveness^[18].

A recent article^[29] questioned the efficacy of such injection therapy. However, the identified treatment approach was flawed in its injection of only one or two bursa(e), a common approach^[30]. I too found disappointing results with that approach. However, there are actually four significant bursae in that location: gluteus medius, gluteus minimus, subgluteus medius and subgluteus minimus bursae^[31].

Retrospective assessment of the last 50 individuals in my practice in whom all four bursae were injected revealed immediate elimination of pain in 49. Pain relief persisted more than 6 mo in 47 individuals. Two individuals had recurrent "hip" pain 3 mo after the initial injections. Their pain responded to repeat injection of the four bursae and they have been pain free since. Involvement of bursae was often (30 instances) bilateral. Because of insurance company limitations, unilateral injections were initially performed, with plan to inject the contralateral the following week. An unexpected observation was resolution of pain in the contralateral bursa, as well as in those injected. Given the effect of bursitis on gait^[32,33], perhaps injection of the most symptomatic side eliminated the mechanical effect of altered gait. That may have allowed the contralateral side to heal. A systematic effect of the injected depot corticosteroid is unlikely, as injection of the above-named peri-trochanteric bursae did not affect concurrent anserine bursitis (which itself is extremely responsive to injection of a depot corticosteroid), nor did it affect concurrent bicipital or supraspinatus tendonitis. As injection of all four bursae is so effective, the role for diagnostic studies (e.g., magnetic resonance imaging) seems an unnecessary expense^[34-37].

It is intriguing that so many exotic approaches (e.g., shock wave therapy and even surgery) to this problem have been pursued^[38-48], when a simple injection approach is so frequently and fully effective. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs may reduce discomfort^[49], but have significant systemic effects and do not resolve the underlying inflammation. Injection of only one or two of the four bursae results in partial, but statistically significant pain relief^[8]. Comparison with elimination of pain in 98% of afflicted individuals by injection of all four bursae suggests the latter provides a greater opportunity for clinical benefit. The term trochanteric bursitis suggests that the inflammation is more focal than what is clinically

observed. While easier to express, perhaps it is time to refer to inflammation in this area, naming all four affected bursae (i.e., gluteus medius, gluteus minimus, subgluteus medius and subgluteus minimus bursitis).

REFERENCES

- 1 Foye PM, Lorenzo CT. Trochanteric bursitis. Available from: URL: <http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/87788-overview>
- 2 Dougherty C, Dougherty JJ. Evaluating hip pathology in trochanteric pain syndrome. Available from: URL: <http://jmm.consultantlive.com/display/article/1145622/1403501>.
- 3 Dougherty C, Dougherty JJ. Managing and preventing hip pathology in trochanteric pain syndrome. *J Musculoskeletal Med* 2008; **25**: 521-523
- 4 Schapira D, Nahir M, Scharf Y. Trochanteric bursitis: a common clinical problem. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil* 1986; **67**: 815-817 [PMID: 3778178]
- 5 Ege Rasmussen KJ, Fanø N. Trochanteric bursitis. Treatment by corticosteroid injection. *Scand J Rheumatol* 1985; **14**: 417-420 [PMID: 3909381 DOI: 10.3109/03009748509102047]
- 6 Shbeeb MI, Matteson EL. Trochanteric bursitis (greater trochanter pain syndrome). *Mayo Clin Proc* 1996; **71**: 565-569 [PMID: 8642885 DOI: 10.4065/71.6.565]
- 7 Bird PA, Oakley SP, Shnier R, Kirkham BW. Prospective evaluation of magnetic resonance imaging and physical examination findings in patients with greater trochanteric pain syndrome. *Arthritis Rheum* 2001; **44**: 2138-2145 [PMID: 11592379]
- 8 Dundeve-Baleva P, Abdel-Megid A, Borham A, Schlesinger N. Trochanteric bursitis: Is there ultrasonographic evidence to suggest inflammation? *Arthritis Rheum* 2011; **63** Suppl 10: 1898 [DOI: 10.1002/art.33310]
- 9 Brinker MR, Miller MD. Fundamentals of Orthopaedics. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1999: 269-285
- 10 Silva F, Adams T, Feinstein J, Arroyo RA. Trochanteric bursitis: refuting the myth of inflammation. *J Clin Rheumatol* 2008; **14**: 82-86 [PMID: 18391676 DOI: 10.1097/RHU.0b013e31816b4471]
- 11 Steinberg JG, Seybold EA. Hip and pelvis. In: Steinberg GG, Akins CM, Baran DT. Orthopaedics in Primary Care. Baltimore: Lippincott, Williams and Wilkins, 1998: 171-203
- 12 Raab SS, Snider TE, Potts SA, McDaniel HL, Robinson RA, Nelson DL, Sigman JD, Thomas PA. Atypical glandular cells of undetermined significance. Diagnostic accuracy and interobserver variability using select cytologic criteria. *Am J Clin Pathol* 1997; **107**: 299-307 [PMID: 9052380]
- 13 Williams BS, Cohen SP. Greater trochanteric pain syndrome: a review of anatomy, diagnosis and treatment. *Anesth Analg* 2009; **108**: 1662-1670 [PMID: 19372352 DOI: 10.1213/ane.0b013e31819d6562]
- 14 McGee DJ. Hip. In: Orthopedic Physical Assessment. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1992: 333-371
- 15 Tibor LM, Sekiya JK. Differential diagnosis of pain around the hip joint. *Arthroscopy* 2008; **24**: 1407-1421 [PMID: 19038713 DOI: 10.1016/j.arthro.2008.06.019]
- 16 Crespo M, Pigrau C, Flores X, Almirante B, Falco V, Vidal R, Pahissa A. Tuberculous trochanteric bursitis: report of 5 cases and literature review. *Scand J Infect Dis* 2004; **36**: 552-558 [PMID: 15370665 DOI: 10.1080/00365540410018157]
- 17 Segal NA, Felson DT, Torner JC, Zhu Y, Curtis JR, Niu J, Nevitt MC. Greater trochanteric pain syndrome: epidemiology and associated factors. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil* 2007; **88**: 988-992 [PMID: 17678660 DOI: 10.1016/j.apmr.2007.04.014]
- 18 Lievens A, Bierma-Zeinstra S, Schouten B, Bohnen A, Verhaar J, Koes B. Prognosis of trochanteric pain in primary care. *Br J Gen Pract* 2005; **55**: 199-204 [PMID: 15808035]
- 19 Breeden Brooks S, Olsen P, Rieger-Kligis S, Mooney L. Peer review: an approach to performance evaluation in a profes-

- sional practice model. *Crit Care Nurs Q* 1995; **18**: 36-47 [PMID: 7584309]
- 20 **Snider RK**. Essentials of Musculoskeletal Care. Rosemont: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons, 1997: 37-39
 - 21 **Cohen SP**, Strassels SA, Foster L, Marvel J, Williams K, Crooks M, Gross A, Kurihara C, Nguyen C, Williams N. Comparison of fluoroscopically guided and blind corticosteroid injections for greater trochanteric pain syndrome: multicentre randomised controlled trial. *BMJ* 2009; **338**: b1088 [PMID: 19366755 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.b1088]
 - 22 **Brinks A**, van Rijn RM, Willemsen SP, Bohnen AM, Verhaar JA, Koes BW, Bierma-Zeinstra SM. Corticosteroid injections for greater trochanteric pain syndrome: a randomized controlled trial in primary care. *Ann Fam Med* 2011; **9**: 226-234 [PMID: 21555750 DOI: 10.1370/afm.1232]
 - 23 **Shbeeb MI**, O'Duffy JD, Michet CJ, O'Fallon WM, Matteson EL. Evaluation of glucocorticosteroid injection for the treatment of trochanteric bursitis. *J Rheumatol* 1996; **23**: 2104-2106 [PMID: 8970048]
 - 24 **Cohen SP**, Narvaez JC, Lebovits AH, Stojanovic MP. Corticosteroid injections for trochanteric bursitis: is fluoroscopy necessary? A pilot study. *Br J Anaesth* 2005; **94**: 100-106 [PMID: 15516348 DOI: 10.1093/bja/aei012]
 - 25 **Valentine T**, Dama K, Erickson M. Treatment of Greater Trochanteric Bursitis Using Hip Joint Mobilizations as a Part of a Multimodal Plan of Care: A Case Report. Available from: URL: <http://content-dm.carrollu.edu/cdm/ref/collec-tion/ptthesis/id/90>
 - 26 **Clarke MT**, Lee PT, Arora A, Villar RN. Levels of metal ions after small- and large-diameter metal-on-metal hip arthroplasty. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 2003; **85**: 913-917 [PMID: 12931818]
 - 27 **Farmer KW**, Jones LC, Brownson KE, Khanuja HS, Hungerford MW. Trochanteric bursitis after total hip arthroplasty: incidence and evaluation of response to treatment. *J Arthroplasty* 2010; **25**: 208-212 [PMID: 19261433]
 - 28 **Clarke MT**, Arora A, Villar RN. Hip arthroscopy: complications in 1054 cases. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2003; **(406)**: 84-88 [PMID: 12579004]
 - 29 **McEvoy JR**, Lee KS, Blankenbaker DG, Munoz del Rio A, Keene JS. Ultrasound-guided corticosteroid treatment of great trochanteric pain syndrome: A comparative effectiveness between greater trochanteric proper bursa and subgluteus medius bursa injections. *Skeletal Radiol* 2012; **41**: 744 [DOI: 10.1007/s00256-012-1403-8]
 - 30 **Cardone DA**, Tallia AF. Diagnostic and therapeutic injection of the hip and knee. *Am Fam Physician* 2003; **67**: 2147-2152 [PMID: 12776964]
 - 31 **Pfirrmann CW**, Chung CB, Theumann NH, Trudell DJ, Resnick D. Greater trochanter of the hip: attachment of the abductor mechanism and a complex of three bursae--MR imaging and MR bursography in cadavers and MR imaging in asymptomatic volunteers. *Radiology* 2001; **221**: 469-477 [PMID: 11687692 DOI: 10.1148/radiol.2211001634]
 - 32 **Shakoob N**, Moio K. A biomechanical approach to musculoskeletal disease. *Best Pract Res Clin Rheumatol* 2004; **18**: 173-186 [PMID: 15121038 DOI: 10.1016/j.berh.2004.02.005]
 - 33 **Swezey RL**. Pseudo-radiculopathy in subacute trochanteric bursitis of the subgluteus maximus bursa. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil* 1976; **57**: 387-390 [PMID: 133652]
 - 34 **Fearon AM**, Scarvell JM, Cook JL, Smith PN. Does ultra-sound correlate with surgical or histologic findings in greater trochanteric pain syndrome? A pilot study. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2010; **468**: 1838-1844 [PMID: 19941093 DOI: 10.1007/s11999-009-1174-2]
 - 35 **Kong A**, Van der Vliet A, Zadow S. MRI and US of gluteal tendinopathy in greater trochanteric pain syndrome. *Eur Radiol* 2007; **17**: 1772-1783 [PMID: 17149624 DOI: 10.1007/s00330-006-0485-x]
 - 36 **Blankenbaker DG**, Ullrick SR, Davis KW, De Smet AA, Haaland B, Fine JP. Correlation of MRI findings with clinical findings of trochanteric pain syndrome. *Skeletal Radiol* 2008; **37**: 903-909 [PMID: 18566811 DOI: 10.1007/s00256-008-0514-8]
 - 37 **McMahon SE**, Smith TO, Hing CB. A systematic review of imaging modalities in the diagnosis of greater trochanteric pain syndrome. *Musculoskeletal Care* 2012; **10**: 232-239 [PMID: 22764065 DOI: 10.1002/msc.1024]
 - 38 **Bierma-Zeinstra SM**, Bohnen AM, Bernsen RM, Ridderikhoff J, Verhaar JA, Prins A. Hip problems in older adults: classification by cluster analysis. *J Clin Epidemiol* 2001; **54**: 1139-1145 [PMID: 11675165 DOI: 10.1016/S0895-4356(01)00398-5]
 - 39 **Furia JP**, Rompe JD, Maffulli N. Low-energy extracorporeal shock wave therapy as a treatment for greater trochanteric pain syndrome. *Am J Sports Med* 2009; **37**: 1806-1813 [PMID: 19439756 DOI: 10.1177/0363546509333014]
 - 40 **Lustenberger DP**, Ng VY, Best TM, Ellis TJ. Efficacy of treatment of trochanteric bursitis: a systematic review. *Clin J Sport Med* 2011; **21**: 447-453 [PMID: 21814140 DOI: 10.1097/JSM.0b013e318221299c]
 - 41 **Lennard TA**. Physiatric Procedures in Clinical Practice. Philadelphia: Hanley and Belfus, 1995: 1-13
 - 42 **Vannet N**, Ferran N, Thomas A, Ghandour A, O'Doherty A. The use of shockwave therapy in the treatment of trochanteric bursitis. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 2010; **92**: 393
 - 43 **Rompe JD**, Segal NA, Cacchio A, Furia JP, Morral A, Maffulli N. Home training, local corticosteroid injection, or radial shock wave therapy for greater trochanter pain syndrome. *Am J Sports Med* 2009; **37**: 1981-1990 [PMID: 19439758 DOI: 10.1177/0363546509334374]
 - 44 **Slawski DP**, Howard RF. Surgical management of refractory trochanteric bursitis. *Am J Sports Med* 1997; **25**: 86-89 [PMID: 9006699 DOI: 10.1177/036354659702500117]
 - 45 **Baker CL**, Massie RV, Hurt WG, Savory CG. Arthroscopic bursectomy for recalcitrant trochanteric bursitis. *Arthroscopy* 2007; **23**: 827-832 [PMID: 17681203 DOI: 10.1016/j.arthro.2007.02.015]
 - 46 **Farr D**, Selesnick H, Janecki C, Cordas D. Arthroscopic bursectomy with concomitant iliotibial band release for the treatment of recalcitrant trochanteric bursitis. *Arthroscopy* 2007; **23**: 905.e1-905.e5 [PMID: 17681215]
 - 47 **Voos JE**, Rudzki JR, Shindle MK, Martin H, Kelly BT. Arthroscopic anatomy and surgical techniques for peritrochanteric space disorders in the hip. *Arthroscopy* 2007; **23**: 1246.e1-1246.e5 [PMID: 17986418]
 - 48 **Fox JL**. The role of arthroscopic bursectomy in the treatment of trochanteric bursitis. *Arthroscopy* 2002; **18**: E34 [PMID: 12209419 DOI: 10.1053/jars.2002.35143]
 - 49 **Green DA**, Murphy WG, Uttley WS. Haemolytic uraemic syndrome: prognostic factors. *Clin Lab Haematol* 2000; **22**: 11-14 [PMID: 10762298]

P- Reviewers Campo GM, Pankaj K S- Editor Zhai HH
L- Editor A E- Editor Zhang DN



Mechanical solution for a mechanical problem: Tennis elbow

Bruce Rothschild

Bruce Rothschild, Department of Medicine, Northeast Ohio Medical University, Rootstown, OH 44272, United States
Bruce Rothschild, Biodiversity Institute, University of Kansas, Lawrence, KS 66045, United States

Author contributions: Rothschild B solely contributed to this paper.

Correspondence to: Bruce Rothschild, Professor, Department of Medicine, Northeast Ohio Medical University, 4209 State Route 44, Rootstown, OH 44272, United States. bmr@ku.edu
Telephone: +1-785-6151523 Fax: +1-785-5942691

Received: February 17, 2013 Revised: March 19, 2013

Accepted: April 10, 2013

Published online: July 18, 2013

Abstract

Lateral epicondylitis is a relatively common clinical problem, easily recognized on palpation of the lateral protuberance on the elbow. Despite the "itis" suffix, it is not an inflammatory process. Therapeutic approaches with topical non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, corticosteroids and anesthetics have limited benefit, as would be expected if inflammation is not involved. Other approaches have included provision of healing cytokines from blood products or stem cells, based on the recognition that this repetitive effort-derived disorder represents injury. Noting calcification/ossification of tendon attachments to the lateral epicondyle (enthesitis), dry needling, radiofrequency, shock wave treatments and surgical approaches have also been pursued. Physiologic approaches, including manipulation, therapeutic ultrasound, phonophoresis, iontophoresis, acupuncture and exposure of the area to low level laser light, has also had limited success. This contrasts with the benefit of a simple mechanical intervention, reducing the stress on the attachment area. This is based on displacement of the stress by use of a thin (3/4-1 inch) band applied just distal to the epicondyle. Thin bands are required, as thick bands (*e.g.*, 2-3 inch wide) simply reduce muscle strength, without significantly reducing stress. This approach appears to be associated with a failure rate

less than 1%, assuming the afflicted individual modifies the activity that repeatedly stresses the epicondylar attachments.

© 2013 Baishideng. All rights reserved.

Key words: Epicondylitis; Tennis elbow; Adaptive equipment; Mechanical overload; Elbow; Inflammation

Core tip: Lateral epicondylitis is a mechanical problem with a mechanical solution. While there have been many approaches, some quite exotic, to this phenomenon, there is a very effective non-invasive treatment: application of a 3/4-1 inch forearm band just below the elbow, of course associated with modification of the activity that is stressing the epicondylar attachments.

Rothschild B. Mechanical solution for a mechanical problem: Tennis elbow. *World J Orthop* 2013; 4(3): 103-106 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-5836/full/v4/i3/103.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5312/wjo.v4.i3.103>

CHARACTER OF LATERAL EPICONDYLITIS

Popularly referred to as tennis elbow, lateral epicondylitis is a relatively common clinical problem^[1,2] that has apparently confounded many attempts at its resolution. Easily recognized on induced pain/replication of symptoms by palpation of the lateral protuberance on the elbow, the term lateral epicondylitis identifies a disorder localized to that lateral epicondyle. The "itis" suffix in the term epicondylitis is misleading. Histological evaluation does not support categorizing it as an inflammatory process^[3-5]. Microscopic examination actually reveals angiofibroblastic and mucoid degeneration, attributed to mechanical overloading^[3]. Indeed, ultrasound evaluation reveals me-

chanical damage to tendons^[6-9].

ANALGESIC AND ANTI-INFLAMMATORY INTERVENTION

The multitude of approaches to management of a clinical problem suggests either that it is quite responsive to intervention or that the optimal approaches have yet to be identified. Many of the approaches to treatment of lateral epicondylitis seem to be predicated on the subsequently falsified hypothesis that the epicondylitis represented an inflammatory process^[3-9]. These attempts have included use of oral or topical non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs^[10-12], injections^[13] of corticosteroids^[10,13-20], anesthetics (e.g., bupivacaine)^[21] or even botulinum toxin^[22] injection, none of which have had documented long-term clinical benefit^[3]. Simply treating the pain symptom with analgesics has also provided inadequate relief^[10,11,21,23].

INJURY-PREDICATED INTERVENTION

Based on recognition that epicondylitis represents an injury, another approach has been to inject autologous blood^[24-27] or platelet-rich plasma^[3,18,21,24,28,29]. This is predicated on the hypothesis that these injections provide growth factors, which stimulate healing. Similarly, skin-derived stem cells have been injected with this goal^[30]. The enthesitis (irritation of tendon insertions) occasionally leads to calcification/ossification of those attachments. Speculation that the ossification/calcification process is the source of pain, radiofrequency^[31] and shock wave^[32,33] treatments have also been pursued. Surgical approaches have included percutaneous tenotomy and arthroscopic approaches^[23,26,34-39].

PHYSIOLOGIC APPROACHES

More physiologic approaches have included physiatric/physical therapy techniques including manipulation, therapeutic ultrasound, phonophoresis, iontophoresis, acupuncture and exposure of the area to low-level laser^[11,19,38,40-43]. An intriguing approach has been dry needling^[25,34]. This is especially remarkable, as the lateral epicondyle has been listed^[44], I believe erroneously^[45], as a fibromyalgia trigger point and needling has been utilized as an approach to treatment of fibromyalgia^[46]. The efficacy of all these approaches has been limited^[3,13-16,25,28,29,38,47]. The study by Creaney *et al*^[25] showed statistically significant clinical improvement in 60%-72%, but not complete relief. This is a greater response than with other approaches, but none identify complete resolution.

MECHANICAL INTERVENTION

The efficacy of these variably invasive approaches contrasts with a simple mechanical intervention. The irritation that appears to be the source of the pain derives

from stresses produced by the muscles which attach to the lateral epicondyle^[48]. Reducing the stress on the attachment area seems a reasonable approach. Logically, a band applied to the forearm, just distal to the elbow, would be expected to reduce stress on muscle attachment to the epicondyle, and it does. Early attempts to utilize this approach, however, were only marginally effective, because commercially available bands have an unintended effect. Those several inch wide bands only reduced effective muscle strength. The reduced available muscle power did reduce stress on the epicondyle, but did so inadequately and use of such armbands was less effective than immobilization of the elbow^[12]. The latter, of course, results in muscle atrophy and loss of strength.

My personal approach has been to utilize Velcro bands of 0.75 to 1 inch in width and to assure their application 1 inch below the epicondyle. That position is critical. Such placement has no effect on muscle strength, but displaces the stresses on the epicondyle, such that it was now at the site of the band and thus distal to the epicondyle. Pain was immediately reduced and eliminated within several weeks. Patients were advised to wear the bands continually, except when sleeping, and to continue their use for two weeks beyond their perception of any residual elbow pain. Recurrences have responded equally well, once the activity responsible for the epicondyle stress is modified. I have had only 5 patients who have not responded (with complete resolution of elbow symptoms) in the three decades that I have utilized this approach. That represents less than 1% failure rate, and that was in individuals who would or could not modify the activity^[2,42,49,50] that was repeatedly stressing the epicondylar attachments.

REFERENCES

- 1 **Hamilton PG.** The prevalence of humeral epicondylitis: a survey in general practice. *J R Coll Gen Pract* 1986; **36**: 464-465 [PMID: 3440991]
- 2 **Shiri R, Viikari-Juntura E, Varonen H, Heliövaara M.** Prevalence and determinants of lateral and medial epicondylitis: a population study. *Am J Epidemiol* 2006; **164**: 1065-1074 [PMID: 16968862 DOI: 10.1093/aje/kwj325]
- 3 **Chaudhury S, de La Lama M, Adler RS, Gulotta LV, Skonieczki B, Chang A, Moley P, Cordasco F, Hannafin J, Fealy S.** Platelet-rich plasma for the treatment of lateral epicondylitis: sonographic assessment of tendon morphology and vascularity (pilot study). *Skeletal Radiol* 2013; **42**: 91-97 [PMID: 23001116 DOI: 10.1007/s00256-012-1518-y]
- 4 **Walz DM, Newman JS, Konin GP, Ross G.** Epicondylitis: pathogenesis, imaging, and treatment. *Radiographics* 2010; **30**: 167-184 [PMID: 20083592 DOI: 10.1148/rg.301095078]
- 5 **Chard MD, Cawston TE, Riley GP, Gresham GA, Hazleman BL.** Rotator cuff degeneration and lateral epicondylitis: a comparative histological study. *Ann Rheum Dis* 1994; **53**: 30-34 [PMID: 8311552 DOI: 10.1136/ard.53.1.30]
- 6 **Regan W, Wold LE, Coonrad R, Morrey BF.** Microscopic histopathology of chronic refractory lateral epicondylitis. *Am J Sports Med* 1992; **20**: 746-749 [PMID: 1280910 DOI: 10.1177/036354659202000618]
- 7 **Connell D, Burke F, Coombes P, McNealy S, Freeman D, Pryde D, Hoy G.** Sonographic examination of lateral epicondylitis. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2001; **176**: 777-782 [PMID:

- 11222225]
- 8 **Levin D**, Nazarian LN, Miller TT, O’Kane PL, Feld RI, Parker L, McShane JM. Lateral epicondylitis of the elbow: US findings. *Radiology* 2005; **237**: 230-234 [PMID: 16118152]
 - 9 **Nirschl RP**, Pettrone FA. Tennis elbow. The surgical treatment of lateral epicondylitis. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 1979; **61**: 832-839 [PMID: 4792229]
 - 10 **Hay EM**, Paterson SM, Lewis M, Hosie G, Croft P. Pragmatic randomised controlled trial of local corticosteroid injection and naproxen for treatment of lateral epicondylitis of elbow in primary care. *BMJ* 1999; **319**: 964-968 [PMID: 10514160 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.319.7215.964]
 - 11 **Trudel D**, Duley J, Zastrow I, Kerr EW, Davidson R, MacDermid JC. Rehabilitation for patients with lateral epicondylitis: a systematic review. *J Hand Ther* 2004; **17**: 243-266 [PMID: 15162109]
 - 12 **Labelle H**, Guibert R. Efficacy of diclofenac in lateral epicondylitis of the elbow also treated with immobilization. The University of Montreal Orthopaedic Research Group. *Arch Fam Med* 1997; **6**: 257-262 [PMID: 9161352]
 - 13 **Altay T**, Günel I, Oztürk H. Local injection treatment for lateral epicondylitis. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2002; **(398)**: 127-130 [PMID: 11964641]
 - 14 **Coombes BK**, Bisset L, Vicenzino B. Efficacy and safety of corticosteroid injections and other injections for management of tendinopathy: a systematic review of randomised controlled trials. *Lancet* 2010; **376**: 1751-1767 [PMID: 20970844 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(10)61160-9]
 - 15 **Orchard J**. Corticosteroid injection for lateral epicondylalgia is helpful in the short term, but harmful in the longer term; data for non-corticosteroid injections and other tendinopathies are limited. *Evid Based Med* 2011; **16**: 116-117 [PMID: 21402568 DOI: 10.1136/ebm1202]
 - 16 **Stefanou A**, Marshall N, Holdan W, Siddiqui A. A randomized study comparing corticosteroid injection to corticosteroid iontophoresis for lateral epicondylitis. *J Hand Surg Am* 2012; **37**: 104-109 [PMID: 22196293 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhssa.2011.10.005]
 - 17 **Peerbooms JC**, Sluimer J, Bruijn DJ, Gosens T. Positive effect of an autologous platelet concentrate in lateral epicondylitis in a double-blind randomized controlled trial: platelet-rich plasma versus corticosteroid injection with a 1-year follow-up. *Am J Sports Med* 2010; **38**: 255-262 [PMID: 20448192 DOI: 10.1177/0363546509355445]
 - 18 **Gosens T**, Peerbooms JC, van Laar W, den Ouden BL. Ongoing positive effect of platelet-rich plasma versus corticosteroid injection in lateral epicondylitis: a double-blind randomized controlled trial with 2-year follow-up. *Am J Sports Med* 2011; **39**: 1200-1208 [PMID: 21422467 DOI: 10.1177/0363546510397173]
 - 19 **Smidt N**, van der Windt DA, Assendelft WJ, Devillé WL, Korthals-de Bos IB, Bouter LM. Corticosteroid injections, physiotherapy, or a wait-and-see policy for lateral epicondylitis: a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2002; **359**: 657-662 [PMID: 11879861]
 - 20 **Assendelft WJ**, Hay EM, Adshead R, Bouter LM. Corticosteroid injections for lateral epicondylitis: a systematic overview. *Br J Gen Pract* 1996; **46**: 209-216 [PMID: 8703521]
 - 21 **Mishra A**, Pavelko T. Treatment of chronic elbow tendinosis with buffered platelet-rich plasma. *Am J Sports Med* 2006; **34**: 1774-1778 [PMID: 16735582]
 - 22 **Wong SM**, Hui AC, Tong PY, Poon DW, Yu E, Wong LK. Treatment of lateral epicondylitis with botulinum toxin: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Ann Intern Med* 2005; **143**: 793-797 [PMID: 16330790]
 - 23 **Baumgard SH**, Schwartz DR. Percutaneous release of the epicondylar muscles for humeral epicondylitis. *Am J Sports Med* 1982; **10**: 233-236 [PMID: 7125045 DOI: 10.1177/036354658201000408]
 - 24 **Thanasas C**, Papadimitriou G, Charalambidis C, Paraskevopoulos I, Papanikolaou A. Platelet-rich plasma versus autologous whole blood for the treatment of chronic lateral elbow epicondylitis: a randomized controlled clinical trial. *Am J Sports Med* 2011; **39**: 2130-2134 [PMID: 21813443 DOI: 10.1177/0363546511417113]
 - 25 **Creaney L**, Wallace A, Curtis M, Connell D. Growth factor-based therapies provide additional benefit beyond physical therapy in resistant elbow tendinopathy: a prospective, single-blind, randomised trial of autologous blood injections versus platelet-rich plasma injections. *Br J Sports Med* 2011; **45**: 966-971 [PMID: 21406450 DOI: 10.1136/bjism.2010.082503]
 - 26 **Connell DA**, Ali KE, Ahmad M, Lambert S, Corbett S, Curtis M. Ultrasound-guided autologous blood injection for tennis elbow. *Skeletal Radiol* 2006; **35**: 371-377 [PMID: 16552606]
 - 27 **Edwards SG**, Calandruccio JH. Autologous blood injections for refractory lateral epicondylitis. *J Hand Surg Am* 2003; **28**: 272-278 [PMID: 12671860]
 - 28 **Mishra A**, Gosens T. Clinical indications and techniques for the use of platelet-rich plasma in the elbow. *Oper Tech Sports Med* 2011; **19**: 170-176
 - 29 **Wolf JM**, Ozer K, Scott F, Gordon MJ, Williams AE. Comparison of autologous blood, corticosteroid, and saline injection in the treatment of lateral epicondylitis: a prospective, randomized, controlled multicenter study. *J Hand Surg Am* 2011; **36**: 1269-1272 [PMID: 21705157 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhssa.2011.05.014]
 - 30 **Connell D**, Datir A, Alyas F, Curtis M. Treatment of lateral epicondylitis using skin-derived tenocyte-like cells. *Br J Sports Med* 2009; **43**: 293-298 [PMID: 19224912 DOI: 10.1136/bjism.2008.056457]
 - 31 **Lin CL**, Lee JS, Su WR, Kuo LC, Tai TW, Jou IM. Clinical and ultrasonographic results of ultrasonographically guided percutaneous radiofrequency lesioning in the treatment of recalcitrant lateral epicondylitis. *Am J Sports Med* 2011; **39**: 2429-2435 [PMID: 21836121 DOI: 10.1177/0363546511417096]
 - 32 **Wang CJ**, Chen HS. Shock wave therapy for patients with lateral epicondylitis of the elbow: a one- to two-year follow-up study. *Am J Sports Med* 2002; **30**: 422-425 [PMID: 12016085]
 - 33 **Speed CA**, Nichols D, Richards C, Humphreys H, Wies JT, Burnet S, Hazleman BL. Extracorporeal shock wave therapy for lateral epicondylitis—a double blind randomized controlled trial. *J Orthop Res* 2002; **2**: 895-898 [DOI: 10.1016/S0736-0266(02)00013-X]
 - 34 **McShane JM**, Shah VN, Nazarian LN. Sonographically guided percutaneous needle tenotomy for treatment of common extensor tendinosis in the elbow: is a corticosteroid necessary? *J Ultrasound Med* 2008; **27**: 1137-1144 [PMID: 18645071]
 - 35 **Schipper ON**, Dunn JH, Ochiai DH, Donovan JS, Nirschl RP. Nirschl surgical technique for concomitant lateral and medial elbow tendinosis: a retrospective review of 53 elbows with a mean follow-up of 11.7 years. *Am J Sports Med* 2011; **39**: 972-976 [PMID: 21220544 DOI: 10.1177/0363546510390452]
 - 36 **Cummins CA**. Lateral epicondylitis: in vivo assessment of arthroscopic debridement and correlation with patient outcomes. *Am J Sports Med* 2006; **34**: 1486-1491 [PMID: 16685085 DOI: 10.1177/0363546506288016]
 - 37 **Owens BD**, Murphy KP, Kuklo TR. Arthroscopic release for lateral epicondylitis. *Arthroscopy* 2001; **17**: 582-587 [PMID: 11447544]
 - 38 **Jobe FW**, Ciccotti MG. Lateral and Medial Epicondylitis of the Elbow. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg* 1994; **2**: 1-8 [PMID: 10708988]
 - 39 **Vangness CT**, Jobe FW. Surgical treatment of medial epicondylitis. Results in 35 elbows. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 1991; **73**: 409-411 [PMID: 1670439]
 - 40 **Smidt N**, Assendelft WJ, Arola H, Malmivaara A, Greens S, Buchbinder R, van der Windt DA, Bouter LM. Effectiveness of physiotherapy for lateral epicondylitis: a systematic review. *Ann Med* 2003; **35**: 51-62 [PMID: 12693613 DOI: 10.1080/07853890310004138]
 - 41 **Simunovic Z**, Trobonjaca T, Trobonjaca Z. Treatment of medial and lateral epicondylitis—tennis and golfer’s elbow—with low level laser therapy: a multicenter double blind,

- placebo-controlled clinical study on 324 patients. *J Clin Laser Med Surg* 1998; **16**: 145-151 [PMID: 9743652 DOI: 10.1089/clm.1998.16.145]
- 42 **Nirschl RP**, Rodin DM, Ochiai DH, Maartmann-Moe C. Ionophoretic administration of dexamethasone sodium phosphate for acute epicondylitis. A randomized, double-blinded, placebo-controlled study. *Am J Sports Med* 2003; **31**: 189-195 [PMID: 12642251]
- 43 **Wolfe F**, Smythe HA, Yunus MB, Bennett RM, Bombardier C, Goldenberg DL, Tugwell P, Campbell SM, Abeles M, Clark P. The American College of Rheumatology 1990 Criteria for the Classification of Fibromyalgia. Report of the Multicenter Criteria Committee. *Arthritis Rheum* 1990; **33**: 160-172 [PMID: 2306288 DOI: 10.1002/art.1780330203]
- 44 **Binder AI**, Hazleman BL. Lateral humeral epicondylitis--a study of natural history and the effect of conservative therapy. *Br J Rheumatol* 1983; **22**: 73-76 [PMID: 6850196 DOI: 10.1093/rheumatology/22.2.73]
- 45 **Siceloff E**, Blasko G, Rothschild BM. Variability of fibromyalgia-like symptoms among individuals with silicone breast implants according to cosmetic and reconstructive indications: Contrast with a non-implant fibromyalgia control group. *Comp Ther* 1999; **25**: 479-491
- 46 **Mayhew E**, Ernst E. Acupuncture for fibromyalgia--a systematic review of randomized clinical trials. *Rheumatology (Oxford)* 2007; **46**: 801-804 [PMID: 17189243 DOI: 10.1093/rheumatology/kel406]
- 47 **Labelle H**, Guibert R, Joncas J, Newman N, Fallaha M, Rivard CH. Lack of scientific evidence for the treatment of lateral epicondylitis of the elbow. An attempted meta-analysis. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 1992; **74**: 646-651 [PMID: 1388172]
- 48 **Ljung BO**, Lieber RL, Fridén J. Wrist extensor muscle pathology in lateral epicondylitis. *J Hand Surg Br* 1999; **24**: 177-183 [PMID: 10372771 DOI: 10.1054/JHSB.1998.0178]
- 49 **Kurppa K**, Viikari-Juntura E, Kuosma E, Huuskonen M, Kivi P. Incidence of tenosynovitis or peritendinitis and epicondylitis in a meat-processing factory. *Scand J Work Environ Health* 1991; **17**: 32-37 [PMID: 2047804]
- 50 **Dimberg L**. The prevalence and causation of tennis elbow (lateral humeral epicondylitis) in a population of workers in an engineering industry. *Ergonomics* 1987; **30**: 573-579 [PMID: 3595554 DOI: 10.1080/00140138708969746]

P- Reviewer Nader ND S- Editor Gou SX L- Editor A
E- Editor Zhang DN



Use of intercostal nerves for different target neurotization in brachial plexus reconstruction

Marios G Lykissas, Ioannis P Kostas-Agnantis, Anastasios V Korompilias, Marios D Vekris, Alexandros E Beris

Marios G Lykissas, Department of Orthopaedic Surgery, Hospital for Special Surgery, Weill Cornell Medical College, New York, NY 10021, United States

Ioannis P Kostas-Agnantis, Anastasios V Korompilias, Marios D Vekris, Alexandros E Beris, Department of Orthopaedic Surgery, University of Ioannina, School of Medicine, Ioannina 45110, Greece

Author contributions: All authors contributed equally to this paper.

Correspondence to: Marios G Lykissas, MD, Department of Orthopaedic Surgery, Hospital for Special Surgery, Weill Cornell Medical College, 535 East 70th Street, New York, NY 10021, United States. mariolyk@yahoo.com

Telephone: +1-513-6527207 Fax: +1-513-6527207

Received: February 2, 2013 Revised: May 3, 2013

Accepted: June 8, 2013

Published online: July 18, 2013

struction; Reinnervation; Root avulsion

Core tip: Intercostal nerves are a very good choice for elbow flexion or extension and shoulder abduction when the intraplexus donor nerves are not available. Use in combination with proper muscles, intercostal nerve transfer can yield adequate power to the paretic upper limb. Reinnervation of native muscles (*i.e.*, latissimus dorsi) should always be sought as they can successfully be transferred later on for further functional restoration.

Lykissas MG, Kostas-Agnantis IP, Korompilias AV, Vekris MD, Beris AE. Use of intercostal nerves for different target neurotization in brachial plexus reconstruction. *World J Orthop* 2013; 4(3): 107-111 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-5836/full/v4/i3/107.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5312/wjo.v4.i3.107>

Abstract

Intercostal nerve transfer is a valuable procedure in devastating plexopathies. Intercostal nerves are a very good choice for elbow flexion or extension and shoulder abduction when the intraplexus donor nerves are not available. The best results are obtained in obstetric brachial plexus palsy patients, when direct nerve transfer is performed within six months from the injury. Unlike the adult posttraumatic patients after median and ulnar nerve neurotization with intercostal nerves, almost all obstetric brachial plexus palsy patients achieve protective sensation in the hand and some of them achieve active wrist and finger flexion. Use in combination with proper muscles, intercostal nerve transfer can yield adequate power to the paretic upper limb. Reinnervation of native muscles (*i.e.*, latissimus dorsi) should always be sought as they can successfully be transferred later on for further functional restoration.

© 2013 Baishideng. All rights reserved.

Key words: Intercostal nerve; Brachial plexus recon-

INTRODUCTION

Nerve transfer or neurotization procedure can provide a useful function in cases of brachial plexus palsy with global spinal nerve root avulsion or irreparable proximal lesion. During a neurotization procedure a healthy donor nerve is separated from its territory, and its proximal stump is then connected directly or *via* a nerve graft to the distal stump of an injured nerve or implanted directly into a more critical denervated muscle target.

Sacrificing a donor nerve must be worthwhile. More specifically, the function gained has to be of greater value than the function lost and the donor nerve must contain adequate number of motor fibers to affect target reinnervation. Additionally, sufficient brain plasticity must take place to affect the restored function. These principles are operable in cases when intercostal nerves are used to neurotize different targets.

Yeoman *et al*^[1] first in 1963 transferred several intercostal nerves into the musculocutaneous nerve using the



Figure 1 A curved incision starts at the anterior axillary line at the level of the upper chest and extends caudally towards the midline of the abdomen at the level of the umbilicus, depending on the number of intercostals nerves to be harvested.

ulnar nerve as a graft. This technique was modified and further developed by Kotani *et al*^[2] and Tsuyama *et al*^[3] ten years later. The pioneers in brachial plexus surgery such as Millesi, Narakas, Celli, Morelli, Terzis, and Gu commonly used intercostal nerve transfer for brachial plexus reconstruction^[4-13].

ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY OF THE INTERCOSTAL NERVES

Intercostal nerves are the ventral primary rami of spinal nerves T1 to T11. The ventral primary ramus of T12 spinal nerve is the subcostal nerve. T1 takes part in the brachial plexus and T12 does not actually occupy an intercostal space. Therefore 10 thoracic nerves from T2 to T11 constitute the anterior branch of intercostal nerves. In the intercostal space there are three muscular layers: (1) external intercostal muscle; (2) internal intercostal muscle; and (3) the innermost intercostal muscle. The upper intercostal nerves (T3, T4, T5 and T6) run parallel to their ribs in between the middle and innermost intercostal muscles, while the lower intercostal nerves (T7, T8, T9, T10 and T11) lie superficial either to transversus thoracic or transversus abdominis muscles.

There are some anatomic differences between the intercostal nerves. The first intercostal nerve is a tiny ramus of the first thoracic nerve and runs along the lower margin of the first rib. This is a purely sensory nerve and travels towards the sternum to innervate the skin near the midline. The second intercostal nerve has a large sensory lateral branch that innervates the skin in the anterior portion of the axilla and forms a connection with the medial cutaneous nerve of the arm. Furthermore, this nerve, because of its very high location is not accessible for neurotization. The anterior portion of the second and third intercostal nerves runs deep to the external intercostal muscle under the rib margin. The fourth intercostal nerve is slightly thinner than the third, its sensory component supplies the skin of the nipple-areolar area, and must be avoided for harvesting. Intercostal nerves from the 7 to the 11 supply muscles and skin of the anterior abdomi-

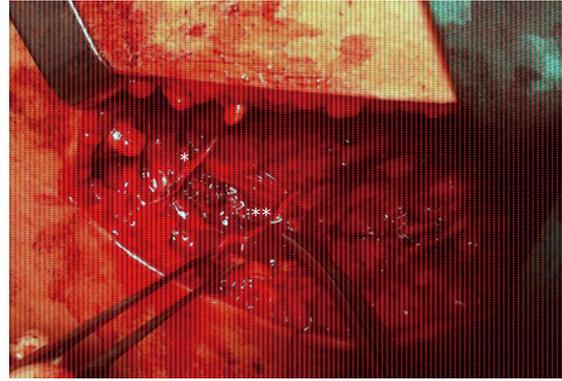


Figure 2 The motor branch is identified on top of the innermost intercostal muscle and dissected from the costochondral junction anteriorly to the posterior axillary line posteriorly. The intercostal nerves are passed to the axilla through a subcutaneous tunnel so they can be sutured to the recipient nerve. Note the intercostal nerve 5 (*) and the intercostal nerve 6 (**) after their dissection and mobilization.

nal wall and theoretically will carry on higher number of axons than the upper intercostal nerves.

An intercostal nerve contains no more than 1200-1300 myelinated fibers and only 40% of them are motor fibers. Freilinger *et al*^[14] studied the motor fiber content in the six, seventh and eight intercostal nerves and found a relatively constant level between 30% and 40% in the six intercostal nerve. The highest percentage (40%) was reached just after the lateral cutaneous branch had left the main trunk. Each intercostal nerve innervates multifunctional muscles and affects the respiratory function and posture including trunk flexion-extension and rotation. After intercostal nerve transfer to a given muscle, central motor programs responsible for respiration and posture will be connected to the innervated muscle. Initially, the function will occur only after voluntary respiratory effort, but with time voluntary control over the restored function will be achieved. These changes of control imply central adaptation, involving rearrangement of motor programs for a given muscle function and respiration^[15].

During nerve transfer procedure, there is always a great risk of wasting transferred motor nerve fibers into inappropriate channels. For this reason, the distal site of coaptation must be as close as possible to the entry point of the motor nerve into the muscle target. This requires harvesting greater length of the donor nerve (Figures 1 and 2). However, the more the dissection proceeds distally, the lower the available number of motor fibers in the intercostal nerve.

To avoid an interposed nerve graft, Celli *et al*^[4] suggested dissection of the intercostal nerve from its origin in the back and tracing it anteriorly for a length of 30-40 cm. Morelli *et al*^[8], in order to maintain the maximal number of motor fibers, suggested transection of the intercostal nerve close to its origin followed by lengthening with a long intermediate nerve graft to reach the target.

INDICATIONS

Intercostal nerves can be used for primary nerve repair

Table 1 Intraoperative scoring system used to estimate the severity score

Score	Description of lesion
0	Avulsion
1	Rupture/avulsion
2	Rupture
3	Rupture/traction
4	Traction
5	Normal

in early or in late cases when free muscle transfer is indicated. The primary nerve transfer contains direct coaptation with single muscle target (musculocutaneous nerve, axillary nerve, triceps branch, and direct coaptation with nerves of multiple muscle targets (ulnar and median nerves); However, innervation of muscle targets for muscle transfer contains (1) neurotization of long thoracic nerve for stabilization of scapula and shoulder abduction; (2) neurotization of the thoracodorsal nerve and using in a second stage the latissimus dorsi muscle as pedicle flap for restoration of elbow flexion or extension; and (3) neurotization of free muscles transferred for shoulder, elbow, or hand reanimation. In patients with history of rib fractures, chest tube placement, or thoracotomy appropriate electrodiagnostic studies of intercostal nerves involved should be performed preoperatively.

DATA ANALYSIS

Brachial plexus palsy with multiple root avulsion is a devastating injury due to paucity of proximal motor donors. The only alternative for restoration of useful function is the use of neurotization procedures. However, the available donor nerves for transfer are few.

Yeoman *et al*¹¹ first described intercostal nerve transfer for brachial plexus reconstruction. Subsequently, several authors have reported their experience with intercostal nerve transfer^{4,16-29}. In order to restore maximum function of the arm, as many intercostal nerves as possible are harvested and transferred. However, the optimal number of intercostal nerves used for nerve transfer remains controversial. Nagano *et al*²⁶ showed 70% good to excellent results using two intercostal nerves for musculocutaneous nerve neurotization. Chuang *et al*¹⁷ reported higher success rate when they used three intercostal nerves. Kawai *et al*²³ supported that at least two intercostal nerves are needed to achieve useful elbow flexion, but using more than two intercostal nerves the results were not significantly better than those obtained when only two intercostal nerves were used.

There is a controversy on which intercostal nerves are the best for transfer. For brachial plexus reconstruction purposes, nine intercostal nerves are available: T3 through T11. Chuang *et al*¹⁷ in their series showed no difference in the functional outcomes after using upper vs lower intercostals.

Different series have advocated the advantages of

direct method of intercostal nerve coaptation without tension to the recipient nerve *vs* using nerve graft^{10,20,25,27,30-33}. None of the patients in series of Friedman *et al*²⁰ who had interposed nerve graft between the transferred intercostal nerve and the musculocutaneous nerve obtained useful elbow flexion. Sedel³⁴ reported useful elbow flexion in five out of nine patients using nerve grafts. Songcharoen²⁸ showed muscle grading 3 or more in 65% of patients after intercostal to musculocutaneous nerve transfer (Table 1). Probably, when direct nerve repair is utilized, the distance to the target is shorter, and the regenerating axons pass through only one coaptation site instead of two when nerve graft has been used.

In late brachial plexus cases, when native muscle targets have been wasted, free muscle transfer innervated by intercostal nerves seem to be a viable procedure^{16,18,35-39}. When planning a muscle transfer for upper extremity reanimation, in order to obtain the maximum result it is imperative to choose the correct muscle for needed function. Due to the greater power demands needed for proximal joint animation, free latissimus dorsi, rectus femoris or vastus lateralis muscles should be used for elbow flexion restoration, and the use of free gracilis muscle should be limited to hand reanimation.

The overall results after intercostal nerve transfer differ in many series. Chuang *et al*¹⁷ showed that 67% of patients obtained a muscle strength of grade 4 or higher after intercostal to musculocutaneous nerve neurotization. Ruch *et al*⁴⁰ reported that 47% of patients obtained good or excellent results after musculocutaneous nerve neurotization with intercostal nerve transfer. Krakauer *et al*²⁴ showed that 6 out of 8 patients achieved a muscle grading of 3 or more after musculocutaneous nerve neurotization with intercostal nerves. Malessy *et al*³⁰ reviewed intercostal to musculocutaneous nerve transfers in adult patients performed in 6 different centers and found that a grade of 3 or more was achieved in 78% of the cases. Kawai *et al*²³ showed a muscle grading of +3 or more in 42% of patients after intercostal to musculocutaneous nerve transfer. Kawabata *et al*⁴¹ reported his experience with intercostal nerve transfer in obstetric brachial plexus palsy patients and found that 84% of their patients achieved a muscle power of grade 4. Terzis *et al*¹² showed excellent results (M4 to M5-) in 5 out of 6 obstetric brachial plexus palsy patients when using intercostal to musculocutaneous nerve transfer and excellent result in 5 out of 11 patients when intercostal nerves were used for triceps nerve reinnervation¹².

Restoration of protective sensation it is imperative to maximize the upper extremity function. Kotani *et al*²¹ reported limited recovery of sensibility in 11 out of 15 cases treated with intercostal nerve transfer for sensory restoration of the hand. Millesi^{7,25} showed recovery of protective sensation in 15 out of 18 patients. Kawai *et al*²³ reported superficial pain recovery and some touch sensation in 5 out of 13 cases. Ihara *et al*²¹ stated that intercostal nerve neurotization of the median nerve provided some touch sensation in 12 out of their 15 cases but no two-point discrimination was recorded. Doi *et al*³⁷

showed tactile gnosis after intercostal nerve transfer to the ulnar nerve in all their patients. Terzis *et al*^[12] reported complete recovery of protective sensation and active wrist and finger flexion after intercostal to ulnar and/or median nerve neurotization in obstetric brachial plexus palsy patients.

CONCLUSION

Intercostal nerve transfer is a valuable procedure in devastating plexopathies. Intercostal nerves are a very good choice for elbow flexion or extension and shoulder abduction when the intraplexus donor nerves are not available. The best results are obtained in obstetric brachial plexus palsy patients, when direct nerve transfer is performed within six months from the injury. Unlike the adult posttraumatic patients after median and ulnar nerve neurotization with intercostal nerves, almost all obstetric brachial plexus palsy patients achieve protective sensation in the hand and some of them achieve active wrist and finger flexion. Use in combination with proper muscles, intercostal nerve transfer can yield adequate power to the paretic upper limb. Reinnervation of native muscles (*i.e.*, latissimus dorsi) should always be sought as they can successfully be transferred later on for further functional restoration.

REFERENCES

- 1 Yeoman PM, Seddon HJ. Brachial plexus injuries: treatment of the flail arm. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 1961; **43**: 493-500
- 2 Kotani PT, Matsuda H, Suzuki T. Trial surgical procedures of nerve transfer to avulsion injuries of plexus brachialis. Proceedings of the 12th Congress of the International Society of Orthopaedic Surgery and Traumatology. Amsterdam: Excerpta Medica, 1972: 348-350
- 3 Tsuyama N, Hara T. Intercostal nerve transfer in the treatment of brachial plexus injury of root-avulsion type. In: Delchef J, de Marneff R, Vander Elst E, editors. Orthopaedic Surgery and Traumatology: Proceedings of the 12th Congress of the International Society of Orthopaedic Surgery and Traumatology. Amsterdam: Elsevier, 1973: 351-353
- 4 Celli L, Rovesta C, Balli A. Neurotization of brachial plexus avulsion with intercostal nerves (personal techniques). In: Brunelli G, editor. Textbook of Microsurgery. Milano: Masson, 1988: 789-795
- 5 Gu YD, Wu MM, Zhen YL, Zhao JA, Zhang GM, Chen DS, Yan JG, Cheng XM. Phrenic nerve transfer for brachial plexus motor neurotization. *Microsurgery* 1989; **10**: 287-289 [PMID: 2593799 DOI: 10.1002/micr.1920100407]
- 6 Millesi H. Brachial plexus injuries: Management and results. In Terzis JK, editor. Microreconstruction of Nerve Injuries. Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders Co., 1987: 347-360
- 7 Millesi H. Surgical management of brachial plexus injuries. *J Hand Surg Am* 1977; **2**: 367-378 [PMID: 198459]
- 8 Morelli E, Morelli A. Injuries of the brachial plexus. *Minerva Chir* 1989; **44**: 749-754 [PMID: 2717039]
- 9 Narakas A. Thoughts on neurotizations or nerve transfers in irreparable nerve lesions. In: Terzis JK, editor. Microreconstruction of Nerve Injuries. Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders Co., 1987: 447-454
- 10 Narakas AO, Hentz VR. Neurotization in brachial plexus injuries. Indication and results. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 1988; (237): 43-56 [PMID: 3056647]
- 11 Terzis JK, Liberson WT, Levine R. Obstetric brachial plexus palsy. *Hand Clin* 1986; **12**: 773-786
- 12 Terzis JK, Kostas I. Intercostal nerve neurotization for the treatment of obstetrical brachial plexus palsy patients. *Semin Plast Surg* 2005; **19**: 66-74 [DOI: 10.1055/s-2005-867109]
- 13 Terzis JK, Vekris MD, Soucacos PN. Outcomes of brachial plexus reconstruction in 204 patients with devastating paralysis. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 1999; **104**: 1221-1240 [PMID: 10513901 DOI: 10.1097/00006534-199910000-00001]
- 14 Freilinger G, Holle J, Sulzgruber SC. Distribution of motor and sensory fibers in the intercostal nerves. Significance in reconstructive surgery. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 1978; **62**: 240-244 [PMID: 353845 DOI: 10.1097/00006534-197808000-00013]
- 15 Malesy MJ, van der Kamp W, Thomeer RT, van Dijk JG. Cortical excitability of the biceps muscle after intercostal-to-musculocutaneous nerve transfer. *Neurosurgery* 1998; **42**: 787-794; discussion 794-795 [PMID: 9574643 DOI: 10.1097/0006123-199804000-00062]
- 16 Akasaka Y, Hara T, Takahashi M. Free muscle transplantation combined with intercostal nerve crossing for reconstruction of elbow flexion and wrist extension in brachial plexus injuries. *Microsurgery* 1991; **12**: 346-351 [PMID: 1770864 DOI: 10.1002/micr.1920120506]
- 17 Chuang DC, Yeh MC, Wei FC. Intercostal nerve transfer of the musculocutaneous nerve in avulsed brachial plexus injuries: Evaluation of 66 patients. *J Hand Surg Am* 1992; **17**: 822-828 [DOI: 10.1016/0363-5023(92)90451-T]
- 18 Dolenc VV. Intercostal neurotization of the peripheral nerves in avulsion plexus injuries. In: Terzis JK, editor. Microreconstruction of Nerve Injuries. Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders Co., 1987: 425-437
- 19 El-Gammal TA, Fathi NA. Outcomes of surgical treatment of brachial plexus injuries using nerve grafting and nerve transfers. *J Reconstr Microsurg* 2002; **18**: 7-15 [PMID: 11917959 DOI: 10.1055/s-2002-19703]
- 20 Friedman AH, Nunley JA, Goldner RD, Oakes WJ, Goldner JL, Urbaniak JR. Nerve transposition for the restoration of elbow flexion following brachial plexus avulsion injuries. *J Neurosurg* 1990; **72**: 59-64 [PMID: 2294186 DOI: 10.3171/jns.1990.72.1.0059]
- 21 Ihara K, Doi K, Sakai K, Kuwata N, Kawai S. Restoration of sensibility in the hand after complete brachial plexus injury. *J Hand Surg Am* 1996; **21**: 381-386 [DOI: 10.1016/S0363-5023(96)80348-0]
- 22 Kawabata H, Shibata T, Matsui Y, Yasui N. Use of intercostal nerves for neurotization of the musculocutaneous nerve in infants with birth-related brachial plexus palsy. *J Neurosurg* 2001; **94**: 386-391 [PMID: 11235940 DOI: 10.3171/jns.2001.94.3.0386]
- 23 Kawai H, Kawabata H, Masada K, Ono K, Yamamoto K, Tsuyuguchi Y, Tada K. Nerve repairs for traumatic brachial plexus palsy with root avulsion. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 1988; (237): 75-86 [PMID: 3191643]
- 24 Krakauer JD, Wodd MB. Intercostal nerve transfer for brachial plexopathy. *J Hand Surg Am* 1994; **19**: 829-835 [DOI: 10.1016/0363-5023(94)90196-1]
- 25 Millesi H. Brachial plexus injuries: Management and results. In: Terzis JK, editor. Microreconstruction of Nerve Injuries. Philadelphia, W.B. Saunders Co., 1987: 347-360
- 26 Nagano A, Ochiai N, Okinaga S. Restoration of elbow flexion in root lesion of brachial plexus injuries. *J Hand Surg Am* 1992; **17**: 815-821 [DOI: 10.1016/0363-5023(92)90450-4]
- 27 Samardzić M, Rasulić L, Grujčić D, Milčić B. Results of nerve transfers to the musculocutaneous and axillary nerves. *Neurosurgery* 2000; **46**: 93-101; discussion 101-103 [PMID: 10626940 DOI: 10.1097/00006123-200001000-00020]
- 28 Songcharoen P. Neurotization in the treatment of brachial plexus injuries. In: Omer GE Jr, Spinner M, Van Beek LA, editors. Management of Peripheral Nerve Problems. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders Co., 1998: 459-464

- 29 **Tsuyama N**, Hara T. Intercostal nerve transfer in the treatment of brachial plexus injury of root-avulsion type. In: Delchef J, de Marneff R, Vander Elst E, editors. *Orthopaedic Surgery and Traumatology: Proceedings of the 12th Congress of the International Society of Orthopaedic Surgery and Traumatology*. Amsterdam: Elsevier, 1973: 351-353
- 30 **Malessy MJ**, Thomeer RT. Evaluation of intercostal to musculocutaneous nerve transfer in reconstructive brachial plexus surgery. *J Neurosurg* 1998; **88**: 266-271 [PMID: 9452234 DOI: 10.3171/jns.1998.88.2.0266]
- 31 **Minami M**, Ishii S. Satisfactory elbow flexion in complete (preganglionic) brachial plexus injuries: produced by suture of third and fourth intercostal nerves to musculocutaneous nerve. *J Hand Surg Am* 1987; **12**: 1114-1118 [PMID: 3320178]
- 32 **Solonen KA**, Vastamäki M, Ström B. Surgery of the brachial plexus. *Acta Orthop Scand* 1984; **55**: 436-440 [PMID: 6475510 DOI: 10.3109/17453678408992390]
- 33 **Sunderland S**. *Nerve and Nerve Injuries*. 2nd ed. New York: Churchill Livingstone, 1978: 1013-1020
- 34 **Sedel L**. The results of surgical repair of brachial plexus injuries. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 1982; **64**: 54-66 [PMID: 7068721]
- 35 **Baliarsing AS**, Doi K, Hattori Y. Bilateral elbow flexion reconstruction with functioning free muscle transfer for obstetric brachial plexus palsy. *J Hand Surg Br* 2002; **27**: 484-486 [DOI: 10.1054/jhsb.2002.0777]
- 36 **Doi K**, Hattori Y, Ikeda K, Dhawan V. Significance of shoulder function in the reconstruction of prehension with double free-muscle transfer after complete paralysis of the brachial plexus. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2003; **112**: 1596-1603 [PMID: 14578790 DOI: 10.1097/01.PRS.0000085820.24572.EE]
- 37 **Doi K**, Muramatsu K, Hattori Y, Otsuka K, Tan SH, Nanda V, Watanabe M. Restoration of prehension with the double free muscle technique following complete avulsion of the brachial plexus. Indications and long-term results. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2000; **82**: 652-666 [PMID: 10819276]
- 38 **Doi K**, Hattori Y, Kuwata N, Soo-heong T, Kawakami F, Otsuka K, Watanabe M. Free muscle transfer can restore hand function after injuries of the lower brachial plexus. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 1998; **80**: 117-120 [PMID: 9460966 DOI: 10.1302/0301-620X.80B1.8073]
- 39 **Doi K**, Shigetomi M, Kaneko K, Soo-Heong T, Hiura Y, Hattori Y, Kawakami F. Significance of elbow extension in reconstruction of prehension with reinnervated free-muscle transfer following complete brachial plexus avulsion. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 1997; **100**: 364-372; discussion 373-374 [PMID: 9252603 DOI: 10.1097/00006534-199708000-00013]
- 40 **Ruch DS**, Friedman A, Nunley JA. The restoration of elbow flexion with intercostal nerve transfers. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 1995; (314): 95-103 [PMID: 7634657]
- 41 **Kawabata H**, Masada K, Tsuyuguchi Y, Kawai H, Ono K, Tada R. Early microsurgical reconstruction in birth palsy. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 1987; (215): 233-242 [PMID: 3802642]

P- Reviewers Ahmed Z, Chen CY, Shafi M **S- Editor** Zhai HH
L- Editor A **E- Editor** Ma S



Cervical adjacent segment pathology following fusion: Is it due to fusion?

Philip Rosenthal, Kee D Kim

Philip Rosenthal, Kee D Kim, Department of Neurological Surgery, UC Davis Health System, Sacramento, CA 95817, United States

Author contributions: Rosenthal P and Kim KD contributed to the writing and editing of the piece; Kim KD contributed the theory of the editorial.

Correspondence to: Kee D Kim, MD, Associate Professor, Chief of Spinal Neurosurgery, Department of Neurological Surgery, UC Davis Health System, 3860 Y Street, Suite 3740, Sacramento, CA 95817, United States. Kee.kim@ucdmc.ucdavis.edu

Telephone: +1-916-7347463 Fax: +1-916-7035368

Received: March 7, 2013 Revised: May 2, 2013

Accepted: May 18, 2013

Published online: July 18, 2013

Abstract

Adjacent segment pathology affects 25% of patients within ten years of anterior cervical discectomy and fusion (ACDF). Laboratory studies demonstrate fused segments increase adjacent level stress including elevated intradiscal pressure and increased range of motion. Radiographic adjacent segment pathology (RASP) has been associated to ACDF in multiple statistically significant studies. Randomized controlled trials (RCTs) comparing anterior cervical discectomy and arthroplasty (ACDA) and ACDF have confirmed ACDF accelerates RASP. The question of greatest clinical interest is whether ACDA, artificial disc surgery, results in fewer adjacent level surgeries than ACDF. Current RCT follow up results reveal only non statistically significant trends favoring ACDA yet the post operative periods are only two to four years. Statistically significant increased RASP in ACDF patients however is already documented. The RCT patients' average ages are in the mid forties with an expected longevity of up to forty more years. Early statistically significant increased RASP in the ACDF patients supports our prediction that given sufficient follow up of ten or more years, fusion will lead to statistically significant higher rate of adjacent level surgery compared to artificial disc surgery.

© 2013 Baishideng. All rights reserved.

Key words: Cervical; Discectomy; Fusion; Arthroplasty; Adjacent; Degeneration

Core tip: Cervical artificial disc surgery has brought the expectation of a lower rate of adjacent segment pathology. Randomized controlled trials (RCTs), currently have only two to four years follow ups and the results regarding adjacent segment surgery indicate only non statistically significant trends favoring the anterior cervical discectomy and arthroplasty (ACDA). Higher rates of radiographic adjacent level pathology, after anterior cervical discectomy and fusion (ACDF) is already documented. We predict that as the RCT average age mid forty-year-old patients continue to their almost forty year expected longevity, adjacent level surgery rates after ACDF will also increase in comparison to the ACDA patients.

Rosenthal P, Kim KD. Cervical adjacent segment pathology following fusion: Is it due to fusion? *World J Orthop* 2013; 4(3): 112-113 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-5836/full/v4/i3/112.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5312/wjo.v4.i3.112>

ADJACENT SEGMENT PATHOLOGY

The advent of anterior cervical discectomy and arthroplasty (ACDA) has brought the expectation of reduced adjacent level disease that may lead to additional surgery^[1,2]. Randomized control trials (RCT), conducted in the United States for a variety of cervical artificial discs have a control arm consisting of anterior cervical discectomy and fusion (ACDF). Thus, these studies may give definitive answers to the much discussed and debated question; Does fusion surgery lead to adjacent segment pathology?

Adjacent segment pathology (ASP) is a serious problem after ACDF. Hilibrand *et al*^[3] reported that 25% of patients experienced symptomatic clinical ASP (CASP) within ten years of ACDF. Fused cervical segments have been documented to increase adjacent level stress in multiple ways including: increased pressure and increased range of motion^[4-9].

Radiographic adjacent segment pathology (RASP), has been linked to ACDF in multiple statistically significant studies^[10]. Baba *et al*^[11] reported 25% new spinal stenosis adjacent to ACDF. Gore *et al*^[10] reported 25% new and 25% progression of degenerative disc changes at adjacent segments within five years of ACDF. Goffin *et al*^[12] reported that 92% of patients developed RASP within five years of ACDF. They concluded that RASP was correlated also to CASP as an independent effect above the natural history of cervical degenerative disc disease. Not all randomized RCTs looked at RASP but those that have, confirmed that ACDF accelerates RASP. Coric *et al*^[13] found much less RASP after the artificial disc compared to fusion. At two year follow-up, 24.8% of ACDF patients compared to 9% of ACDA had RASP with very high statistical significance, ($P = 0.0001$). Beaurain *et al*^[14] for the Moby-C RCT, also at two year follow-up 34.6% RASP with ACDF compared to 17.5% after ACDA. Looking at all the available data, most will agree that there is an overwhelming and robust evidence for increased RASP with ACDF as opposed to ACDA.

But does fusion lead to more adjacent level surgeries than an artificial disc? Currently published and/or available data from RCTs show a trend, albeit statistically insignificant, towards increased ASP surgeries^[1]. Most current RCT reports have only a two year follow up and not surprisingly there is no statistically significant difference between ACDF and ACDA with respect to CASP. Two, or even four year follow ups are too short a time when dealing with DDD that may take decades to become symptomatic. Most of the RCT patients were in their 40's and they are expected to live 30 or 40 more years. The increased RASP and the trend of increased CASP in the ACDF patients portend what is obvious. Cervical fusion accelerates adjacent segment pathology and will lead to increased adjacent segment surgery. We predict that given sufficient length of follow-up (at least 10 years), fusion will lead to statistically significant increased rate of adjacent level surgery as opposed to artificial disc.

REFERENCES

1 **Upadhyaya CD**, Wu JC, Trost G, Haid RW, Traynelis VC, Tay B, Coric D, Mummaneni PV. Analysis of the three United States Food and Drug Administration investigational device exemption cervical arthroplasty trials. *J Neurosurg*

- Spine* 2012; **16**: 216-228 [PMID: 22195608 DOI: 10.3171/2011.6.SPINE10623]
- 2 **Ding C**, Hong Y, Liu H, Shi R, Hu T, Li T. Intermediate clinical outcome of Bryan Cervical Disc replacement for degenerative disk disease and its effect on adjacent segment disks. *Orthopedics* 2012; **35**: e909-e916 [PMID: 22691666 DOI: 10.3928/01477447-20120525-33]
- 3 **Hilibrand AS**, Carlson GD, Palumbo MA, Jones PK, Bohlman HH. Radiculopathy and myelopathy at segments adjacent to the site of a previous anterior cervical arthrodesis. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 1999; **81**: 519-528 [PMID: 10225797]
- 4 **Natarajan RN**, Chen BH, An HS, Andersson GB. Anterior cervical fusion: a finite element model study on motion segment stability including the effect of osteoporosis. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)* 2000; **25**: 955-961 [PMID: 10767808 DOI: 10.1097/00007632-200004150-00010]
- 5 **Fuller DA**, Kirkpatrick JS, Emery SE, Wilber RG, Davy DT. A kinematic study of the cervical spine before and after segmental arthrodesis. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)* 1998; **23**: 1649-1656 [PMID: 9704371 DOI: 10.1097/00007632-199808010-00006]
- 6 **Chang UK**, Kim DH, Lee MC, Willenberg R, Kim SH, Lim J. Changes in adjacent-level disc pressure and facet joint force after cervical arthroplasty compared with cervical discectomy and fusion. *J Neurosurg Spine* 2007; **7**: 33-39 [PMID: 17633485 DOI: 10.3171/SPI-07/07/033]
- 7 **Weinhoffer SL**, Guyer RD, Herbert M, Griffith SL. Intradiscal pressure measurements above an instrumented fusion. A cadaveric study. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)* 1995; **20**: 526-531 [PMID: 7604320 DOI: 10.1097/00007632-199503010-00004]
- 8 **Eck JC**, Humphreys SC, Lim TH, Jeong ST, Kim JG, Hodges SD, An HS. Biomechanical study on the effect of cervical spine fusion on adjacent-level intradiscal pressure and segmental motion. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)* 2002; **27**: 2431-2434 [PMID: 12435970 DOI: 10.1097/01.BRS.0000031261.66972.B1]
- 9 **Lopez-Espina CG**, Amirouche F, Havalad V. Multilevel cervical fusion and its effect on disc degeneration and osteophyte formation. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)* 2006; **31**: 972-978 [PMID: 16641772 DOI: 10.1097/01.brs.0000215205.66437.c3]
- 10 **Gore DR**, Sepic SB. Anterior cervical fusion for degenerated or protruded discs. A review of one hundred forty-six patients. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)* 1984; **9**: 667-671 [PMID: 6505833 DOI: 10.1097/00007632-198410000-00002]
- 11 **Baba H**, Furusawa N, Imura S, Kawahara N, Tsuchiya H, Tomita K. Late radiographic findings after anterior cervical fusion for spondylotic myeloradiculopathy. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)* 1993; **18**: 2167-2173 [PMID: 8278827 DOI: 10.1097/00007632-199311000-00004]
- 12 **Goffin J**, Geusens E, Vantomme N, Quintens E, Waerzegers Y, Depreitere B, Van Calenberg F, van Loon J. Long-term follow-up after interbody fusion of the cervical spine. *J Spinal Disord Tech* 2004; **17**: 79-85 [PMID: 15260088 DOI: 10.1097/00024720-200404000-00001]
- 13 **Coric D**, Nunley PD, Guyer RD, Musante D, Carmody CN, Gordon CR, Laurysen C, Ohnmeiss DD, Boltes MO. Prospective, randomized, multicenter study of cervical arthroplasty: 269 patients from the Kineflex | C artificial disc investigational device exemption study with a minimum 2-year follow-up: clinical article. *J Neurosurg Spine* 2011; **15**: 348-358 [PMID: 21699471 DOI: 10.3171/2011.5.SPINE10769]
- 14 **Beaurain J**, Bernard P, Dufour T, Fuentes JM, Hovorka I, Huppert J, Steib JP, Vital JM, Aubourg L, Vila T. Intermediate clinical and radiological results of cervical TDR (Mobi-C) with up to 2 years of follow-up. *Eur Spine J* 2009; **18**: 841-850 [PMID: 19434431 DOI: 10.1007/s00586-009-1017-6]

P- Reviewers Aota Y, Wang JC **S- Editor** Wen LL
L- Editor A **E- Editor** Ma S



Orthopaedic perspective on bone metastasis

Alan P Molloy, Gary C O'Toole

Alan P Molloy, Gary C O'Toole, Department of Orthopaedic Oncology, St Vincents Hospital, Dublin 4, Ireland

Author contributions: Molloy AP contributed to data review, drafting of paper; O'Toole GC was the consultant supervisor, contributed to review and approval of paper.

Correspondence to: Gary C O'Toole, MD, Department of Orthopaedic Oncology, St Vincents Hospital, Elm Park, Dublin 4, Ireland. alanpmolloy@yahoo.com

Telephone: +353-1221-4000 Fax: +353-1277-4190

Received: October 31, 2012 Revised: May 21, 2013

Accepted: June 5, 2013

Published online: July 18, 2013

Abstract

The incidence of cancer is increasing worldwide, with the advent of a myriad of new treatment options, so is the overall survival of these patients. However, from an orthopaedic perspective, there comes the challenge of treating more patients with a variety of metastatic bone lesions. The consequences of such lesions can be significant to the patient, from pain and abnormal blood results, including hypercalcemia, to pathological fracture. Given the multiple options available, the treatment of bone metastasis should be based on a patient-by patient manner, as is the case with primary bone lesions. It is imperative, given the various lesion types and locations, treatment of bone metastasis should be performed in an individualised manner. We should consider the nature of the lesion, the effect of treatment on the patient and the overall outcome of our decisions. The dissemination of primary lesions to distant sites is a complex pathway involving numerous cytokines within the tumour itself and the surrounding microenvironment. To date, it is not fully understood and we still base a large section of our knowledge on Pagets historic "seed and soil" theory. As we gain further understanding of this pathway it will allow us develop more medical based treatments. The treatment of primary cancers has long been provided in a multi-disciplinary setting to achieve the best patient outcomes. This should also be true for the treatment of bone metastases. Orthopaedic surgeons should be involved in the

multidisciplinary treatment of such patients given that there are a variety of both surgical fixation methods and non-operative methods at our disposal.

© 2013 Baishideng. All rights reserved.

Key words: Bone metastases; Diagnosis; Pathophysiology; Surgical treatment, Medical treatment

Core tip: This paper discusses the pathophysiology and patient implications of bone metastasis. We aim to describe the orthopaedic input into the management of this condition, especially in a multi-disciplinary setting. We believe that orthopaedics do not have a significant enough involvement in the treatment of long bone metastasis, although from this paper we feel we have many options to offer. The future of metastasis treatment may be targeted at the molecular level but current management options do require an understanding of musculoskeletal oncology to obtain best patient outcomes through operative and non-operative means.

Molloy AP, O'Toole GC. Orthopaedic perspective on bone metastasis. *World J Orthop* 2013; 4(3): 114-119 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-5836/full/v4/i3/114.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5312/wjo.v4.i3.114>

INTRODUCTION

The American Cancer Society estimates that 1.64 million cases of cancer will be diagnosed in the United States in 2012^[1]. Approximately 50% of these cases involve tumours of the breast, prostate, lung, kidney and thyroid. These tumours commonly metastasize to bone and account for 80% of all skeletal metastases^[2]. This compares to an estimated 2890 cases of primary bone tumours that will be diagnosed during the same period^[1]. These figures emphasize the importance of being able to recognise, investigate, manage and intervene appropriately in the course of metastatic disease in order to preserve function

and quality of life while minimizing complications.

The microenvironment associated with bone is ideal for tumour progression. Bone is a highly vascular mineral which produces adhesion molecules and is a source of angiogenic and bone resorbing molecules, all of which are conducive to the spread and development of tumours^[3,4]. It also contains immobilised growth factors, which, when released, further enhance tumour cell proliferation^[3,5].

Earliest evidence of skeletal metastases dates from 400 BC^[6]. The term “metastasis” was first used by Hippocratic physicians, is of Greek origin and means the “change in the seat of a disease”.

Throughout the 19th century, further investigation was carried out to elicit the mechanism behind the development of metastases. This era gave rise to pagets “seed and soil” theory, which postulated that tissues (“soil”) receiving tumour cells could either be congenial or hostile^[7]. The preferential development of bone metastases first postulated by Stephen Paget in 1889 noted that “in a cancer of the breast the bones suffer in a special way, which cannot be explained by any theory of embolism alone”. Hence he proposed the widely acknowledged “seed and soil hypothesis”. Circulating disseminated cancer cells activate bone to provide the ideal “soil” in which the aforementioned “seeds” can grow.

Others explained metastases on a purely stochastic basis^[8]. It is now accepted that both methods occur, approximately 60% of metastatic sites can be predicted on a purely haematological and/or lymphatic route basis, the remainder of metastases involve intricate interactions between the tumour and host sites at the cellular and molecular level.

The identification of bone metastases is a significant development for patients. Their treatment can change completely as does their outcome. Not only can this news have a physical effect on patients’ lives but also an emotional effect. As the treatment of metastatic disease is multidisciplinary in nature, it is imperative that orthopaedic surgeons are involved at an early stage and not just following pathological fracture or the development spinal stenosis.

DIAGNOSIS

Bone metastases and their associated complications (bone pain, pathological fractures, spinal cord compression, loss of independence and mobility and abnormal electrolytes) are the major morbidities associated with advanced disease and the symptoms with which patients will present^[9].

The critical aspect in the investigation of a patient with potential metastases involves recognition of the above symptoms as possible progression of the primary tumour to bone. Imaging has an important role in the detection, diagnosis, prognostication, treatment planning, and follow-up monitoring of bone metastases.

Despite the relative insensitivity of plain radiographs in detecting small or early metastases, initial investigations should always include plain radiography. The presence of

sclerosis or osteolysis on the X-ray can aid in diagnosis of the metastatic lesion, with sclerosis typically indicating a prostatic lesion and osteolytic lesions secondary to a breast primary^[9,10].

Technetium-99m (99mTc) bone scintiscanning (*i.e.*, radionuclide bone scanning) is the most cost-effective and widely available whole-body screening test for the assessment of bone metastases. Combined analysis with plain radiography and 99mTc bone scintiscans improves diagnostic accuracy in detecting bone metastases and assessing the response to therapy^[10].

Computed tomography (CT) scanning is an invaluable modality in those cases where bone scan confirms a focal abnormality but plain radiography cannot confirm any metastases. All bony metastatic lesions are depicted well on CT, including those of an osteoblastic, osteolytic and mixed nature.

Despite the expensive nature of the modality, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is very sensitive in the detection of metastases. Although some studies have suggested whole body MRI as a possible alternative to 99mTc bone scanning in the skeletal evaluation of bone metastases, this would be an impractical and expensive choice. MRI is primarily used in the evaluation of vertebral metastases for spinal cord compression or soft tissue involvement^[11].

Histological diagnosis of metastases can be obtained from core biopsy of the effected bone, or CT guided biopsy should the former prove difficult. Alternatively, in the case of a patient presenting with a pathological fracture in the setting of known metastases, bone reamings at the time of surgical fixation can also be histologically analysed for the presence of circulating tumour cells.

MECHANISM OF METASTATIC LESION FORMATION

Metastasis involves a number of complex cell-cell interactions that ultimately leads to the development and growth of cancer cells in a distant visceral or bony site. Cells from the primary tumour must detach and extravasate. Following this they must migrate through the endothelium into the surrounding blood vessels, attach to the endothelium of a distant site after surviving the turbulent arterial blood supply, then migrate through the endothelium and extracellular matrix of the distant organ. Finally these circulating tumour cells must develop in the distant organ and facilitate the growth of further cancer cells^[12].

The capacity to enter the circulation requires that neoplastic cells must have intrinsic properties that facilitate this process. The tumour cell must have the ability to induce neovascularization and be capable of crossing from the tumour stroma to the vasculature by invading the basement membrane of the vascular endothelium^[13]. This process is facilitated by cell adhesion molecules (CAMs). Several categories of CAMs exist, including intercellular adhesion molecules (ICAMs), selectins and cadherins^[14,15].

Once in the circulation, embolization of the tumour

Table 1 Mirels classification of metastatic bone lesions

Variable	Score		
	1	2	3
Site	Upper limb	Lower limb	Peritrochanter
Pain	Mild	Moderate	Functional
Lesion	Blastic	Mixed	Lytic
Size	< 1/3	1/3-2/3	> 2/3

cell is facilitated by adhesion to P- and L-selectins, located on platelets and leucocytes respectively. Adhesion to the endothelium of the metastatic tissue is mediated *via* E-selectin. Upon adhesion, an integrin signalling pathway is initiated, the net result of which is up-regulation of both the anti-apoptotic machinery and proteolytic activity in the microenvironment, thus facilitating the extravasation of tumour cells out of the circulation, and their invasion into the host tissue^[16].

Disseminated tumour cells also contain integrins, a transmembrane receptor family which allows their attachment to several peptide sequences present on certain bone matrix proteins. These cell-surface molecules are involved in signal transduction and have been implicated in the mediation of cell migration, differentiation and apoptosis. Many studies have shown the correlation of increased integrin expression with malignant potential^[17].

While our understanding of the molecular mechanisms of metastases has improved significantly since the earliest observations of Billroth^[18], we remain ignorant of the intricacies of metastases. Selective therapeutic agents targeted exclusively at metastatic cells have yet to be developed^[19] and much remains to be discovered about the critical determinants of metastatic process. However, the accelerated advances in the fields of molecular biology and genetics augurs well for the future.

TREATMENT OPTIONS FOR SKELETAL METASTASES

Bisphosphonates

Current medical options for the treatment of bone metastases primarily involves the use of bisphosphonates^[20]. These are potent inhibitors of osteoclast activity and bone resorption and are widely used in both metabolic bone disease and metastatic disease. The mechanism of action of bisphosphonates targets the key stage of metastatic development where the disseminated circulating tumour cell stimulates further bone resorption. The disruption of this interaction, for either a palliative or preventative means, decreases the amplification of the metastatic process.

More recent studies have investigated the direct anti-tumour effects of bisphosphonates. It is believed that along with their inhibition of bone resorption, bisphosphonates may induce apoptosis of certain disseminated cancer cells, such as breast cancer cells. Furthermore, it is now believed from *in vivo* studies that bisphosphonates alter the properties of adhesion molecules in the bone

Table 2 Capanna classification, classification according to tumour type

Classification according to tumour type	
Class 1	Solitary metastatic lesion Primary with good prognosis Interval after primary over 3 years
Class 2	Pathological fracture at any site
Class 3	Impending fracture in a major weight bearing bone
Class 4	Osteoblastic lesions at all sites Osteolytic or mixed lesions in non-structural bones Osteolytic lesion with no impending fracture in major weight-bearing bone Lesions of the iliac wing, anterior pelvis or scapula

matrix thus inhibiting the direct attachment of circulating tumour cells to the bone microenvironment^[12,20]. However, despite their benefits in the treatment of symptomatic metastatic disease, they have not improved survival in patients with bone metastases^[20].

Surgery

There is no strict rationale governing the surgical management of skeletal metastases. Clinical, medical, radiological and surgical factors, coupled with the inherent biology of the primary tumour all contribute to the decision making process. Furthermore, surgery in the setting of metastatic disease requires reliable data about patient survival and quality of life^[21]. Earliest recommendations were simple and called for surgical intervention in the clinical scenario where fractures were “predicable”^[22], the idea that the patient should have a reasonable life expectancy before considering surgery is relatively new^[23].

Protocols for the treatment of bone metastases of the appendicular skeleton have been published. Mirels described a weighted scoring system in an attempt at quantifying the risk of sustaining a pathological fracture^[24] and consequently the relative urgency for orthopaedic surgical intervention (Table 1). Mirels’ system remains in wide use today despite the recent introduction of newer protocols^[25]. The newer system describes the guidelines to surgical indications, types of surgery and recommended implants. Capanna classifies all patients with bony metastases into 4 categories (Table 2). Patients accumulate a representative numerical value for their metastatic lesion depending on figures awarded for potential survival (Table 3), the size of the lesion, the biomechanics of the bone involved and the potential response to adjuvant therapy. This dictates the recommended surgical intervention and the prosthetic implant to be used (Table 4).

However, despite involved classification systems and resultant surgical recommendations, each case of metastatic disease warrants treatment on an individual basis. Huge strides have been made in the techniques of surgical management for achieving secure fixation of pathological fractures despite what is often extensive bony destruction^[26,27]. The use of internal fixation devices and prostheses along with methyl methacrylate has greatly assisted the orthopaedic surgeon in managing

Table 3 Capanna classification, potential survival	
Survival	Sources of metastasis
< 1 yr (1 point)	Unknown Primary Melanoma Lung Pancreas Thyroid (undifferentiated) Stomach
1-2 yr (3 points)	Colon Breast (not responding to adjuvants) Liver Uterus (responding to adjuvants)
> 2 yr (6 points)	Thyroid (differentiated) Myeloma Lymphoma Breast (responding to adjuvants) Rectum Prostate Kidney

Table 4 Capanna classification, recommended surgical procedure and prosthetic type			
Survival	Biomechanics	Size defect	Response to adjuvant therapy
< 1 yr = 1 pts	Tibia = 1pt	Small (1/3) = 1 pt	Yes = 0
1-2 yr = 3 pts	Femur, humerus = 2 pts	Large (1/2) = 2 pts	No = 3
> 2 yr = 6 pts	Subtrochanteric, supracondylar = 3 pts	Defective or pathological fracture = 3 pts	
	< 5 points =	Minimal or simple osteosynthesis	
	5-10 points =	Reinforced osteosynthesis	
	10-15 points =	Megaprosthesis or intercalary spacer	



Figure 1 Different fixation methods for metastases of the humerus. A, B: Show the pre and post-operative X-rays of a 71-year-old male with painful metastatic lesions secondary to renal cell carcinoma. The humerus was stabilized using a locked intramedullary nail with a prophylactic distal cerclage wire, excellent pain relief was achieved; C, D: Show the pre and post-operative status of a 40-year-old female with painful metastatic breast carcinoma. The painful lesion was excised and replaced with an endoprosthesis, good symptomatic relief was achieved.

pathological fractures. Despite improved fixation, healing of pathological fractures remains a challenge, overall 35% of pathological fractures can be expected to heal in 6 mo^[28], highest healing rates are seen with multiple myeloma (67%) and the lowest rates were seen with lung carcinoma (0%).

It is imperative that whatever fixation device is used the construct should be durable enough to reliably last the remainder of the patient's life expectancy^[29] and it is our recommendation that the entire diseased bone be stabilised at one operative sitting (Figure 1).

Although the general orthopaedic surgeon will commonly deal with pathological fractures in their day to day practice, we are commonly referred patients with spinal metastases. As with any patient, a complete history and examination is necessary, including a thorough neurological examination. Radiology should include an MRI to assess spinal cord compression and the extent of spinal metastases. Neurological status may necessitate urgent decompression with stabilisation of the adjacent vertebrae. However, prior to major surgery, it is important to liaise with the patients' oncology service to ascertain overall outcome. In palliative cases, radiotherapy may be

an option, if the patient is medically unfit to undergo and survive spinal surgery.

Radiotherapy

The indications to treat bone metastases with radiation therapy include pain, risk of pathological fracture and spinal cord compression. The goals of radiation therapy are to palliate pain, decrease the use of narcotic analgesics, improve ambulation and restore function and prevent complications of pathological fracture.

External-beam radiation is the most common treatment and remains the cornerstone of palliative treatment with hundreds of thousands of patients undergoing treatment each year in the United States. Radiotherapy for bone metastases attempts to exploit the radiosensitivity characteristics inherent to tumour cells such as significant vascularization, high rates of proliferation and non-differentiation^[30]. The exact mechanism of action of radiation therapy is unknown and remains speculative^[31]. It was only recently that animal models established that radiation had its effect on tumour cells and that the benefit did not accrue from an indirect effect on the peripheral surrounding normal cells^[32,33].

Clinically, several choices exist regarding the use of radiation therapy for bone metastases. Opinions differ on the best regimen for each patient, the most suitable radiation dosage, the appropriate adjuvant therapies and their timings and the best delivery mechanism.

The radiation therapy oncology group (RTOG) conducted a prospective randomized trial (RTOG 74-02)^[34]. Patients with a solitary metastasis were randomized to receive 2000 cGy using 4 Gy fractions delivered over a short 5-day period or 4050 cGy delivered using 2.7 Gy fractions over a 3 wk period. There was no significant difference in outcomes measured by pain relief. Similar results were seen in patients with multiple metastases who were randomized to receive 3000 cGy in 10 fractions

over 2 wk or 1500 cGy in 5 fractions over 1 wk or 2000 cGy in 5 fractions over 1 wk or 2500 cGy in 5 fractions over 1 wk.

Since the RTOG trial^[34] there have been several trials evaluating dose fractionation schemes^[34,35] with no schedule or dose demonstrating significantly better outcome. Single-fraction radiotherapy has been advocated as a cost effective way to palliate bony metastases. A single dose of 8 Gy has been shown to have significantly better response rates when compared to a single dose of 4 Gy^[36]. When a single dose regimen was compared to a multi-fraction regimen (20 Gy/5 fractions or 30 Gy/10 fractions), no differences were noted in time to symptomatic improvement, time to complete pain relief or time to first increase in pain up to 12 mo post-treatment^[37].

It is now accepted that accelerated regimens may be appropriate in certain clinical settings for instance if the life expectancy is less than 3 years or where social circumstances decree that the patient cannot return on a daily basis. A protracted course may be more appropriate where the disease is more indolent or where the patient has a good performance status with a longer life expectancy or a solitary bone metastasis where the primary is well controlled^[38].

Chemotherapy

The decision to use chemotherapy for the management of bone metastases relies on several factors. Firstly, the histology of the tumour must be known and secondly, it is important to know whether the patient has previously received chemotherapy because even the most chemosensitive tumours, such as lymphomas, are frequently resistant on relapse^[38].

Certain tumours are considered highly chemosensitive. Such tumours frequently respond rapidly and often chemotherapy results in a significant reduction in the tumour burden. Complete or near complete remissions can be seen in certain chemosensitive tumours. Highly chemosensitive bone tumours may be considered for a trial of chemotherapy unless the involved bone is mechanically unstable.

Chemotherapy should rarely be considered for the management of metastatic tumours if the primary tumour is not chemoresponsive or chemosensitive. Response rates for these tumour types are so low that responses are considered anecdotal and it is reasonable to consider the tumour to have no effective chemotherapy.

CONCLUSION

Unfortunately the incidence of primary tumours is increasing, with that comes the challenge of dealing with metastatic disease. An individualised approach is recommended for each patient, taking into account the nature and biology of the primary lesion, life expectancy and the most appropriate surgical option. An increased understanding of the biology of the metastatic process may produce new treatment options to arrest this pathway at

a variety of positions. Surgical management relies upon basic principles, but also on a fundamental knowledge of the nature of bone metastases.

REFERENCES

- 1 **American Cancer Society.** Cancer Facts and Figures. Atlanta: American Cancer Society, 2012
- 2 **Buckwalter JA, Brandser EA.** Metastatic disease of the skeleton. *Am Fam Physician* 1997; **55**: 1761-1768 [PMID: 9105203]
- 3 **Hauschka PV, Mavrakos AE, Iafrazi MD, Doleman SE, Klagsbrun M.** Growth factors in bone matrix. Isolation of multiple types by affinity chromatography on heparin-Sepharose. *J Biol Chem* 1986; **261**: 12665-12674 [PMID: 3745206]
- 4 **Kahn D, Weiner GJ, Ben-Haim S, Ponto LL, Madsen MT, Bushnell DL, Watkins GL, Argenyi EA, Hichwa RD.** Positron emission tomographic measurement of bone marrow blood flow to the pelvis and lumbar vertebrae in young normal adults. *Blood* 1994; **83**: 958-963 [PMID: 8111065]
- 5 **van der Pluijm G, Sijmons B, Vloedgraven H, Deckers M, Papapoulos S, Löwik C.** Monitoring metastatic behavior of human tumor cells in mice with species-specific polymerase chain reaction: elevated expression of angiogenesis and bone resorption stimulators by breast cancer in bone metastases. *J Bone Miner Res* 2001; **16**: 1077-1091 [PMID: 11393785 DOI: 10.1359/jbmr.2001.16.6.1077]
- 6 **Urteaga O, Pack GT.** On the antiquity of melanoma. *Cancer* 1966; **19**: 607-610 [PMID: 5326247 DOI: 10.1002/1097-0142(196605)]
- 7 **Ribatti D, Mangialardi G, Vacca A.** Stephen Paget and the 'seed and soil' theory of metastatic dissemination. *Clin Exp Med* 2006; **6**: 145-149 [PMID: 17191105 DOI: 10.1007/s10238-006-0117-4]
- 8 **Ewing J.** Neoplastic diseases: A Textbook on Tumours. Philadelphia and London: W. B. Saunders Co., 1919
- 9 **Harvey HA, Cream Lv.** Biology of bone metastases: causes and consequences. *Clin Breast Cancer* 2007; **7** Suppl 1: S7-S13 [PMID: 17683652 DOI: 10.3816/CBC.2007.s.001]
- 10 **Cook GJ, Fogelman I.** The role of nuclear medicine in monitoring treatment in skeletal malignancy. *Semin Nucl Med* 2001; **31**: 206-211 [PMID: 11430527 DOI: 10.1053/snuc.2001.23527]
- 11 **Bombardieri E, Gianni L.** The choice of the correct imaging modality in breast cancer management. *Eur J Nucl Med Mol Imaging* 2004; **31** Suppl 1: S179-S186 [PMID: 15127242 DOI: 10.1007/s00259-004-1541-x]
- 12 **Coleman RE.** Metastatic bone disease: clinical features, pathophysiology and treatment strategies. *Cancer Treat Rev* 2001; **27**: 165-176 [PMID: 11417967 DOI: 10.1053/ctrv.2000.0210]
- 13 **Liotta LA, Kohn E.** Cancer invasion and metastases. *JAMA* 1990; **263**: 1123-1126 [PMID: 2405205 DOI: 10.1001/jama.263.8.1123]
- 14 **Mundy GR.** Mechanisms of bone metastasis. *Cancer* 1997; **80**: 1546-1556 [PMID: 9362421 DOI: 10.1002/(SICI)1097-0142(19971015)80]
- 15 **Mareel MM, Behrens J, Birchmeier W, De Bruyne GK, Vlemminckx K, Hoogewijs A, Fiers WC, Van Roy FM.** Down-regulation of E-cadherin expression in Madin Darby canine kidney (MDCK) cells inside tumors of nude mice. *Int J Cancer* 1991; **47**: 922-928 [PMID: 2010235]
- 16 **Orr FW, Wang HH, Lafrenie RM, Scherbarth S, Nance DM.** Interactions between cancer cells and the endothelium in metastasis. *J Pathol* 2000; **190**: 310-329 [PMID: 10685065]
- 17 **Berry MG, Gui GP, Wells CA, Carpenter R.** Integrin expression and survival in human breast cancer. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2004; **30**: 484-489 [PMID: 15135474 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2004.01.016]
- 18 **Billroth T.** General Surgical Pathology and Therapeutics, in Fifty Lectures: A Textbook for Students and Physicians. New York: D. Appleton and Company, 1871: 233-243

- 19 **Freije JM**, Lawrence JA, Hollingshead MG, De la Rosa A, Narayanan V, Grever M, Sausville EA, Paull K, Steeg PS. Identification of compounds with preferential inhibitory activity against low-Nm23-expressing human breast carcinoma and melanoma cell lines. *Nat Med* 1997; **3**: 395-401 [PMID: 9095172]
- 20 **Senaratne SG**, Colston KW. Direct effects of bisphosphonates on breast cancer cells. *Breast Cancer Res* 2002; **4**: 18-23 [PMID: 11879555]
- 21 **Kohno N**. Treatment of breast cancer with bone metastasis: bisphosphonate treatment - current and future. *Int J Clin Oncol* 2008; **13**: 18-23 [PMID: 18307015 DOI: 10.1007/s10147-007-0726-2]
- 22 **Nathan SS**, Healey JH, Mellano D, Hoang B, Lewis I, Morris CD, Athanasian EA, Boland PJ. Survival in patients operated on for pathologic fracture: implications for end-of-life orthopedic care. *J Clin Oncol* 2005; **23**: 6072-6082 [PMID: 16135474 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2005.08.104]
- 23 **Beals RK**, Lawton GD, Snell WE. Prophylactic internal fixation of the femur in metastatic breast cancer. *Cancer* 1971; **28**: 1350-1354 [PMID: 5125680]
- 24 **Cohen DB**, Riley LH. Management of metastatic carcinoma to the spine: Surgical treatment. In: Menendez LR. Orthopaedic Knowledge Update: Musculoskeletal Tumours. 1st ed. Rosemont IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons, 2002: 331-348
- 25 **Mirels H**. Metastatic disease in long bones: A proposed scoring system for diagnosing impending pathologic fractures. 1989. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2003; (415): S4-13 [PMID: 14600587 DOI: 10.1097/01.blo.0000093045.56370.dd]
- 26 **Capanna R**, Campanacci DA. Indications for the surgical treatment of long bone metastases. In: Jasmin C, Coleman RE, Coia LR, Capanna R, Saillant G. Textbook of Bone Metastases. Chichester: Wiley and Sons, 2005: 135-146 [DOI: 10.1002/0470011610.ch10]
- 27 **Galasko CSB**, Banks AJ. The stabilization of skeletal metastases. In: Hellman K, Eccles SA: Treatment of Metastasis: Problems and Prospects. London: Taylor and Francis, 1985: 85-88
- 28 **Marco RA**, Sheth DS, Boland PJ, Wunder JS, Siegel JA, Healey JH. Functional and oncological outcome of acetabular reconstruction for the treatment of metastatic disease. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2000; **82**: 642-651 [PMID: 10819275]
- 29 **Gainor BJ**, Buchert P. Fracture healing in metastatic bone disease. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 1983; (178): 297-302 [PMID: 6883864 DOI: 10.1097/00003086-198309000-00041]
- 30 **Böhm P**, Huber J. The surgical treatment of bony metastases of the spine and limbs. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 2002; **84**: 521-529 [PMID: 12043772 DOI: 10.1302/0301-620X.84B4.12495]
- 31 **Presad KN**. Handbook of Radiology. 2nd ed. Boca Raton: CRC press, 1995
- 32 **Hoskin PJ**. Scientific and clinical aspects of radiotherapy in the relief of bone pain. *Cancer Surv* 1988; **7**: 69-86 [PMID: 3289744]
- 33 **Goblirsch M**, Lynch C, Mathews W, Manivel JC, Mantyh PW, Clohisy DR. Radiation treatment decreases bone cancer pain through direct effect on tumor cells. *Radiat Res* 2005; **164**: 400-408 [PMID: 16187742]
- 34 **Tong D**, Gillick L, Hendrickson FR. The palliation of symptomatic osseous metastases: final results of the Study by the Radiation Therapy Oncology Group. *Cancer* 1982; **50**: 893-899 [PMID: 6178497]
- 35 **Okawa T**, Kita M, Goto M, Nishijima H, Miyaji N. Randomized prospective clinical study of small, large and twice-a-day fraction radiotherapy for painful bone metastases. *Radiother Oncol* 1988; **13**: 99-104 [PMID: 2462264 DOI: 10.1016/0167-8140(88)90031-X]
- 36 **Niewald M**, Tkocz HJ, Abel U, Scheib T, Walter K, Nieder C, Schnabel K, Berberich W, Kubale R, Fuchs M. Rapid course radiation therapy vs. more standard treatment: a randomized trial for bone metastases. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 1996; **36**: 1085-1089 [PMID: 8985030 DOI: 10.1016/S0360-3016(96)00388-4]
- 37 **Jeremic B**, Shibamoto Y, Acimovic L, Milicic B, Milisavljevic S, Nikolic N, Aleksandrovic J, Igrutinovic I. A randomized trial of three single-dose radiation therapy regimens in the treatment of metastatic bone pain. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 1998; **42**: 161-167 [PMID: 9747834 DOI: 10.1016/S0360-3016(98)00174-6]
- 38 8 Gy single fraction radiotherapy for the treatment of metastatic skeletal pain: randomised comparison with a multi-fraction schedule over 12 months of patient follow-up. Bone Pain Trial Working Party. *Radiother Oncol* 1999; **52**: 111-121 [PMID: 10577696]

P- Reviewers Brooks D, Iwamoto J, Nyland J

S- Editor Huang XZ **L- Editor** A **E- Editor** Ma S



Errors in visual estimation of flexion contractures during total knee arthroplasty

Cale A Jacobs, Christian P Christensen, Peter W Hester, David M Burandt, Aaron D Sciascia

Cale A Jacobs, Christian P Christensen, Peter W Hester, David M Burandt, Aaron D Sciascia, Lexington Clinic, Lexington, KY 40504, United States

Author contributions: All the authors contributed to this article. Correspondence to: Cale A Jacobs, PhD, Lexington Clinic, 700 Bob-O-Link Dr., Lexington, KY 40504, United States. calejacobs@hotmail.com

Telephone: +1-859-2588238 Fax: +1-859-2588565
Received: December 11, 2012 Revised: April 23, 2013
Accepted: May 9, 2013

Published online: July 18, 2013

Abstract

AIM: To quantify and reduce the errors in visual estimation of knee flexion contractures during total knee arthroplasty (TKA).

METHODS: This study was divided into two parts: Quantification of error and reduction of error. To quantify error, 3 orthopedic surgeons visually estimated pre-operative knee flexion contractures from lateral digital images of 23 patients prior to and after surgical draping. A repeated-measure analysis of variance was used to compare the estimated angles prior to and following the placement of the surgical drapes with the true knee angle measured with a long-arm goniometer. In an effort to reduce the error of visual estimation, a dual set of inclinometers was developed to improve intraoperative measurement of knee flexion contracture during TKA. A single surgeon performed 6 knee extension measurements with the device during 146 consecutive TKA cases. Three measurements were taken with the desired tibial liner trial thickness, and 3 were taken with a trial that was 2 mm thicker. An intraclass correlation coefficient (ICC) was calculated to assess the test-retest reliability for the 3 measurements taken with the desired liner thickness, and a paired *t* test was used to determine if the knee extension measurements differed when a thicker tibial trial liner was placed.

RESULTS: The surgeons significantly overestimated flexion contractures in 23 TKAs prior to draping and significantly underestimated the contractures after draping (actual knee angle = $6.1^\circ \pm 6.4^\circ$, pre-drape estimate = $6.9^\circ \pm 6.8^\circ$, post-drape estimate = $4.3^\circ \pm 6.1^\circ$, $P = 0.003$). Following the development and application of the measurement devices, the measurements were highly reliable (ICC = 0.98), and the device indicated that $2.7^\circ \pm 2.2^\circ$ of knee extension was lost with the insertion of a 2 mm thicker tibial liner. The device failed to detect a difference in knee extension angle with the insertion of the 2 mm thicker liner in 9/146 cases (6.2%).

CONCLUSION: We determined the amount of error associated with visual estimation of knee flexion contractures, and developed a simple, reliable device and method to improve feedback related to sagittal alignment during TKA.

© 2013 Baishideng. All rights reserved.

Key words: Extension; Knee; Arthroplasty; Flexion contracture

Core tip: Fixed flexion contractures of even 1° have been reported to result in inferior outcomes after total knee arthroplasty. Despite the importance of correcting flexion deformities during surgery, the knee angle is often estimated visually. We developed an intraoperative measurement device that was highly reliable (intraclass correlation coefficient = 0.98) and was able to detect a loss of knee extension with the placement of a 2 mm thicker trial polyethylene liner in 93.8% of cases.

Jacobs CA, Christensen CP, Hester PW, Burandt DM, Sciascia AD. Errors in visual estimation of flexion contractures during total knee arthroplasty. *World J Orthop* 2013; 4(3): 120-123 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-5836/full/v4/i3/120.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5312/wjo.v4.i3.120>

INTRODUCTION

During total knee arthroplasty (TKA), surgeons often visually evaluate the angle of knee extension when determining if additional soft tissue releases or bony resection are required to correct flexion contractures. However, with the knee draped and tourniquet inflated, errors in the estimation of knee extension angle may occur as the surgeon can no longer visualize the location of the hip joint. The purposes of this two-part study were to (1) determine the effect of surgical draping and tourniquet inflation on visual estimation of knee flexion contractures, and (2) develop and evaluate an inexpensive manual tool to provide surgeons with accurate and reliable measures of knee extension angle during TKA.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Patients electing to undergo primary TKA ($n = 23$, age = 64.5 ± 10.9 years, body mass index = 32.2 ± 5.9 kg/m²) volunteered to participate in this IRB-approved study designed to better understand the magnitude of errors in visual estimation of knee flexion contractures during TKA. Once the patient had been anesthetized and in a supine position, a member of the surgical team lifted the operative limb into 20°-30° of hip flexion with the foot rotated so that the second toe was pointed towards the ceiling in order to neutrally align the knee. The preoperative knee flexion contracture was then measured using a long-arm goniometer prior to the placement of surgical draping and tourniquet. Digital photographs of the lateral aspect of the surgical limb were taken prior to and after the placement of standard surgical drapes and inflation of the tourniquet. The camera location for all of the photographs was perpendicular to the operative leg and consistently placed 183 cm from the table. The knee was centered within the camera's field of view, and the hip, knee, and ankle were fully visible prior to draping, after the knee had been partially draped, and after the knee had been fully draped and the tourniquet inflated.

Three board-certified orthopedic surgeons individually estimated the degree of knee flexion contracture from each of the photographs. The order of the resulting 69 images was randomized and the surgeons were blinded to their previous responses as well as the responses of the other surgeons.

The aforementioned results demonstrated a need to reduce the risk of uncorrected flexion contractures by providing surgeons with more accurate and reliable methods to measure knee flexion contractures during TKA. A simple, inexpensive tool that consisted of two inclinometers, both of which featured a freely moving angle indicator arm with an inferior counterweight, was developed with an inferior counterweight was developed (Biomet, Warsaw, IN, United States). After placement of the trial components, the inclinometers were used to measure the resulting degree of flexion contracture. The



Figure 1 Intraoperative use of the knee flexion contracture measuring device.

tibial inclinometer was designed to slide over the handle of the tibial trial inserter, and a set screw was tightened to ensure that it was properly fixed to the handle of the inserter. A drill pin was then inserted into the femoral trial, and the femoral inclinometer was placed on the drill pin (Figure 1). As the leg was positioned in approximately 30° of hip flexion, the degree of knee flexion contracture was measured as the difference between the 2 angles indicated on the tibial and femoral inclinometers. Simply put, if the two inclinometers were divergent when viewing from the lateral aspect of the knee, then full extension had not been achieved whereas if the two inclinometers were convergent, then the knee was in hyperextension. Full extension (0°) was present if the two were parallel.

The resulting value was the combination of the angular difference between the femur and tibia, but also included the relative degree of flexion or extension of the femoral component and the degree of posterior slope of the proximal tibial cut (Figure 2). For example, a surgeon performing cruciate-retaining TKA preferred to make the proximal tibial cut with 3° of posterior slope. If in this example the femoral component was properly aligned in the sagittal plane (neither flexed nor extended), then the difference between the study device's two inclinometers would be -3° (the two pins would be convergent indicating hyperextension). The knee itself; however, would truly be in full extension (0°) as the 3° posterior slope of the tibial component would create the appearance of hyperextension.

Statistical analysis

To evaluate the errors of visual estimation, a repeated-measure analysis of variance was used to compare the estimated angles prior to and following the placement of the surgical drapes and tourniquet inflation with the preoperative flexion contracture measured with the long-arm goniometer. To evaluate the efficacy of the novel device, we assessed the consistency of measurement and the ability to detect a change in angle. A single surgeon performed 6 knee flexion contracture measurements with the study device during 146 TKA procedures (141



Figure 2 The effect of posterior slope of the proximal tibial cut on the measurements with the study device. If the femoral and tibial components were both placed perpendicular to the long axis of each bone as pictured, then the study device would indicate the presence of a 5° flexion contracture. However, if the proximal tibia was cut with 5° of posterior slope, it would give the false impression that full extension had been achieved as the two inclinometers would be parallel.

patients). Three of the measurements were made with the intended polyethylene thickness, and 3 measurements were taken with the insertion of a trial liner that was 2 mm thicker than the intended liner. An intraclass correlation coefficient (ICC) was calculated to assess the test-retest reliability for the 3 repeated flexion contracture measurements. To evaluate ability to detect a change in knee angle, we compared the measurements with the 2 different liner thicknesses using a paired *t* test. All statistical analyses were performed using SPSS Statistics version 20 (IBM, Armonk, NY, United States).

RESULTS

Prior to draping, the surgeons significantly overestimated the degree of flexion contracture but significantly underestimated the degree of contracture after draping (goniometric measurement = $6.1^\circ \pm 6.4^\circ$, pre-drape visual estimate = $6.9^\circ \pm 6.8^\circ$, post-drape visual estimate = $4.3^\circ \pm 6.1^\circ$, $P = 0.003$).

When evaluating the novel intraoperative measurement device, the measurements were highly reliable (ICC = 0.98), and the device indicated that $2.7^\circ \pm 2.2^\circ$ of knee extension was lost with the insertion of a 2 mm thicker tibial liner. The device failed to detect a difference with the insertion of the 2 mm thicker liner in 9/146 cases (6.2%).

DISCUSSION

The purposes of this two-part study were to determine the effect of surgical draping and tourniquet inflation on visual estimation of knee flexion contractures, and develop and evaluate an inexpensive manual tool to provide surgeons with accurate and reliable measures of knee extension angle during TKA. It was evident after Part I of this study that the ability to correctly estimate the degree of extension during TKA becomes more difficult when

the knee is draped.

On average, the three study surgeons visually estimated the knee extension angle to be 2.6° less when the knee was draped compared to estimates made prior to draping. This highlights the need for an intraoperative technique that allows more accurate evaluation of sagittal alignment to avoid fixed flexion contractures. Postoperative flexion contractures of even 1° may negatively affect clinical outcomes^[1-6]. By limiting a patient's ability to properly accept weight during gait, flexion contractures cause patients to walk with a bent-knee gait, increasing contact forces in the patellofemoral joint of the involved knee^[7,8]. Furthermore, postoperative flexion contractures have been demonstrated to create mechanical overloading of the contralateral knee during gait, potentially contributing to the progression of osteoarthritis in the contralateral knee^[9]. As such, great care should be taken to properly correct flexion contractures during TKA.

The novel device used in this study provided a consistent method to intraoperatively measure knee flexion contractures without the added expense or operative time associated with computer-assisted navigation or other electronic sensors.

COMMENTS

Background

Fixed flexion contractures of even 1° have been reported to result in inferior outcomes after total knee arthroplasty (TKA). Despite the importance of correcting flexion deformities during surgery, the knee angle is often estimated visually.

Research frontiers

When visually estimating knee flexion contractures, surgeons significantly underestimated the contractures after draping.

Innovations and breakthroughs

The authors developed an intraoperative measurement device that was highly reliably and was able to detect a loss of knee extension with the placement of a 2 mm thicker trial polyethylene liner in 93.8% of cases.

Applications

The simple, inexpensive device used in this study may allow surgeons to more consistently correct flexion deformities during TKA.

Peer review

This is a well done, interesting paper, presenting strong data.

REFERENCES

- 1 **Ritter MA**, Lutgring JD, Davis KE, Berend ME. The effect of postoperative range of motion on functional activities after posterior cruciate-retaining total knee arthroplasty. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2008; **90**: 777-784 [PMID: 18381316 DOI: 10.2106/JBJS.F.01022]
- 2 **Ritter MA**, Lutgring JD, Davis KE, Berend ME, Pierson JL, Meneghini RM. The role of flexion contracture on outcomes in primary total knee arthroplasty. *J Arthroplasty* 2007; **22**: 1092-1096 [PMID: 18078875 DOI: 10.1016/j.arth.2006.11.009]
- 3 **Dempsey AL**, Branch TP, Mills T, Karsch RM. High-intensity mechanical therapy for loss of knee extension for worker's compensation and non-compensation patients. *Sports Med Arthrosc Rehabil Ther Technol* 2010; **2**: 26 [PMID: 20939921 DOI: 10.1186/1758-2555-2-26]
- 4 **Uhl TL**, Jacobs CA. Torque measures of common therapies for the treatment of flexion contractures. *J Arthroplasty* 2011; **26**: 328-334 [PMID: 20206464 DOI: 10.1016/j.arth.2009.12.007]

- 5 **Seyler TM**, Marker DR, Bhave A, Plate JF, Marulanda GA, Bonutti PM, Delanois RE, Mont MA. Functional problems and arthrofibrosis following total knee arthroplasty. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2007; **89** Suppl 3: 59-69 [PMID: 17908871 DOI: 10.2106/JBUS.G.00457]
- 6 **Padua R**, Ceccarelli E, Bondi R, Campi A, Padua L. Range of motion correlates with patient perception of TKA outcome. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2007; **460**: 174-177 [PMID: 17414170 DOI: 10.1097/BLO.0b013e318046ccb7]
- 7 **Perry J**. Pathologic gait. *Instr Course Lect* 1990; **39**: 325-331 [PMID: 2186119]
- 8 **Sachs RA**, Daniel DM, Stone ML, Garfein RF. Patellofemoral problems after anterior cruciate ligament reconstruction. *Am J Sports Med* 1989; **17**: 760-765 [PMID: 2624287 DOI: 10.1177/036354658901700606]
- 9 **Harato K**, Nagura T, Matsumoto H, Otani T, Toyama Y, Suda Y. Extension limitation in standing affects weight-bearing asymmetry after unilateral total knee arthroplasty. *J Arthroplasty* 2010; **25**: 225-229 [PMID: 19264442 DOI: 10.1016/j.arth.2009.02.003]

P- Reviewers Grote S, Trieb K **S- Editor** Huang XZ
L- Editor A **E- Editor** Ma S



Biomechanical characteristics of bone in streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats: An *in-vivo* randomized controlled experimental study

Nektarios Korres, Eleftherios Tsiridis, George Pavlou, Athanasios Mitsoudis, Despina N Perrea, Aristedes B Zoumbos

Nektarios Korres, KAT First Department of Orthopaedics and Trauma, 14561 Athens, Greece

Eleftherios Tsiridis, Academic Orthopaedics and Trauma Unit, Division of Surgery, Aristotle University Medical School, 54124 Thessaloniki, Greece

George Pavlou, Department of Orthopaedics, Robert Jones and Agnes Hunt Orthopaedic Hospital, Oswestry SY10 7AG, United Kingdom

Athanasios Mitsoudis, Department of Biomechanics, School of Applied Mathematical and Physical Sciences, National Technical University of Athens, 14561 Athens, Greece

Despina N Perrea, Department of Experimental Surgical Research "N.S. Christeas", Athens University Medical School, 14561 Athens, Greece

Aristedes B Zoumbos, Department of Orthopaedics, Academic Orthopaedic Department "Attikon" Hospital, Athens University Medical School, 14561 Athens, Greece

Author contributions: Korres N contributed performed the original research; Tsiridis E contributed to the idea, analysis and write up; Pavlou G contributed to the write up, editing and submission process; Mitsoudis A contributed to the mechanical testing and analysis of data; Perrea DN contributed to the original research and animal study; Zoumbos AB contributed academic support and editing.

Correspondence to: Eleftherios Tsiridis, MD, MSc, DMed, PhD, FRCS, Associate Professor of Orthopaedics, Academic Orthopaedics and Trauma Unit, Division of Surgery, Aristotle University Medical School, University Campus, Salonika 570, 54124 Thessaloniki, Greece. etsiridis@doctors.org.uk

Telephone: +30-697-6439739 Fax: +30-697-6439739

Received: December 25, 2012 Revised: March 22, 2013

Accepted: May 9, 2013

Published online: July 18, 2013

METHODS: The biomechanical effect of diabetes on the structural integrity of the tibia in streptozotocin induced diabetic Wistar rats was analysed. Induction of diabetes was achieved by an intra-peritoneal injection and confirmed by measuring serial blood glucose levels (> 150 mg/dL). After 8 wk the tibiae were harvested and compared to a control group. Biomechanical analysis of harvested tibiae was performed using a three-point bending technique on a servo hydraulic MTS 858 MiniBionix frame. Maximum force applied to failure (N), stiffness (N × mm) and energy absorbed (N/mm) were recorded and plotted on load displacement curves. A displacement control loading mode of 1 mm/min was selected to simulate quasi-static loading conditions. Measurements from load-displacement curves were directly compared between groups.

RESULTS: Fourteen streptozotocin induced diabetic Wistar rats were compared against nineteen non-diabetic controls. An average increase of 155.2 g in body weight was observed in the control group compared with only 5 g in the diabetic group during the experimental study period. Levels of blood glucose increased to 440.25 mg/dL in the diabetic group compared to 116.62 mg/dL in the control group. The biomechanical results demonstrate a highly significant reduction in the maximum load to failure from 69.5 N to 58 N in diabetic group compared to control ($P = 0.011$). Energy absorption to fracture was reduced from 28.2 N in the control group to 23.5 N in the diabetic group ($P = 0.082$). No significant differences were observed between the groups for bending stiffness.

CONCLUSION: Streptozotocin-induced diabetes in rodents reduces the maximum force and energy absorption to failure of bone, suggesting a predisposition for fracture risk.

Abstract

AIM: To investigate the *in vivo* effects of type I diabetes on the mechanical strength of tibial bone in a rodent model.

© 2013 Baishideng. All rights reserved.

Key words: Streptozotocin; Rodent; Bone; Biomechanics

Core tip: The bones of streptozotocin-induced diabetic Wistar rats are more fragile with reduced toughness, characterized by a reduction in the capacity to absorb energy and with lower forces required to induce fracture in comparison to those in the control group. Our findings confirm previous studies and lend weight to the literature describing the detrimental relationship between the mechanical properties of bone subjected to diabetes mellitus. Further research needs to be conducted to ascertain whether uncontrolled diabetes in a human population affects the structural and biomechanical properties of bone.

Korres N, Tsiridis E, Pavlou G, Mitsoudis A, Perrea DN, Zoumbos AB. Biomechanical characteristics of bone in streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats: An *in-vivo* randomized controlled experimental study. *World J Orthop* 2013; 4(3): 124-129 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-5836/full/v4/i3/124.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5312/wjo.v4.i3.124>

INTRODUCTION

Bone is a composite of organic collagen and inorganic crystalline hydroxyapatite. Bone loss in diabetes mellitus (DM) has been attributed to metabolic abnormalities, abnormal calcium concentration within cells, and high blood glucose levels^[1]. DM interferes with the formation of the collagen network, therefore affecting the biomechanical integrity of bone. Any basis for reduction in bone integrity and material strength has yet to be accurately defined. A lack of insulin in *in vitro* experiments results in a reduction in ossification and calcification and a reduction in cartilage formation^[2]. Furthermore, in rat studies the proliferation of osteoblasts and nucleotide synthesis^[3,4] *in vitro* are associated with insulin binding through expression of insulin receptors^[5]. Production of advanced glycation end products has also been implicated in the reduction of bone material strength in diabetes, through the non-enzymatic cross-linking of collagen^[6,7]. Despite molecular evidence for this theory, mechanical data on the effect of diabetes on bone remain conflicting and sparse.

Clinical and experimental studies demonstrate that diabetes is associated with molecular and cellular changes with resultant alterations to bone physiology^[8]. Patients with type 1 DM have been observed to exhibit a disproportionately high risk of fracture with reduced bone mass, leading to speculation that diabetic bone has reduced strength^[9,10]. Furthermore studies indicate that diabetes exerts a similar effect on bone to that observed in the normal ageing process, with a predisposition to fracture susceptibility, delayed union and osteoporosis^[11]. The biomechanical properties of bone in diabetes have been

poorly addressed in the literature with conflicting results. Fleischli *et al.*^[12] demonstrated no differences in the material properties of human metatarsal bones when comparing younger diabetics to older non-diabetic donors. In a subsequent study on cadaveric human tibiae no significant differences were demonstrated between diabetic and non-diabetic specimens^[13]. Animal studies suggest a reduction in bone mineral density as a direct consequence of DM. This is exhibited by bone loss in trabecular bone and failure to accrue cortical bone due to premature cessation of growth^[14]. Further biomechanical experimental animal studies have demonstrated either increased stiffness^[9,15] or reduced stiffness^[16-18]. These variances are confusing but may be accounted for due to a number of factors. Stiffness as an indicator of overall bone strength alone is not the only significant biomechanical factor that can be affected by diabetes. Taken in isolation, changes in stiffness may be a consequence of a reduction in total whole bone strength. Any decoupling of stiffness or strength as a ratio may account for the reported differences observed in studies. Changes to strength may not only be an effect of the material strength of the tissues but also a consequence of differences in the size and shape of the bone being tested. Furthermore, the length of time that the rats were exposed to a diabetic state may also account for differences in results.

The aim of the current study is to examine and quantify the mechanical behavior of bone in streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats compared to normal controls.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Animal model

The experimental protocol was ethically approved by the General Directorate of Veterinary Services (license No: K/7559/29-10-09) and by the Bioethics Committee of University of Athens Medical School, Hellas. The study was conducted in accordance with Hellenic legislation for experimental animal studies (P.D.160/91) and in compliance with European Union law (86/609/EEC.2015/92) and the Convention on Vertebrate Animals Protection for experimental or other scientific purposes (123/1986). Forty male Wistar rats aged 3 mo, weighing between 200-300 g were supplied by the Institute Pasteur. Wistar rats represent a close homology to the human type 1 DM phenotype, demonstrating comparable genetic and physiological characteristics. All animals had free access to food and water. Animals were randomly assigned to a control (C) or diabetic (D) group. Those assigned to the D group were induced to a diabetic state by an intra-peritoneal injection of streptozotocin at a dose of 55 mg/kg body weight. Streptozotocin is an agent known to be specifically toxic to the beta cells in the islets of Langerhans in the pancreas. The mechanism of action is thought to be mediated by alkylation of DNA bases, resulting in reduction of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide. This, therefore, eliminates production of insulin and induces a hyperglycaemic state. After 1 wk, body weight estimation,

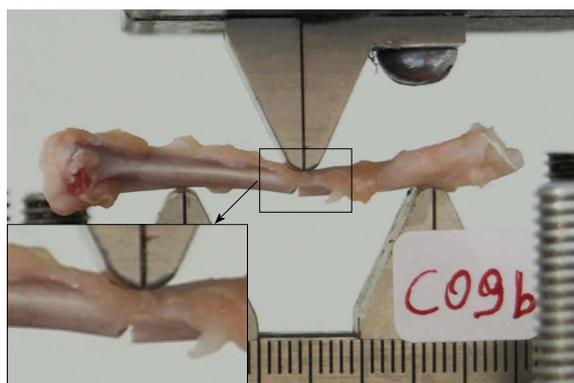


Figure 1 Mini-Bionix Frame with application of three-point bending at the mid diaphysis.

and glucose blood sampling was conducted to determine animals in a hyperglycemic state, defined as blood sugar > 150 mg/dL. Twenty-six animals were originally induced with streptozotocin to a diabetic state. Seven out of those 26 animals were excluded from the study (3 died and 4 did not respond) leaving 19 animals in the D group. The diabetic state was defined as polyuria and minimal weight gain post streptozotocin injection. Fourteen rats remained in the C group and compared with the 19 rats in the D group. Eight weeks after induction of diabetes, the animals were euthanized according to the Convention on Vertebrate Animals Protection for experimental scientific purposes (123/1986) using isoflurane gas and sodium-pentobarbital. Tibial bones were carefully dissected of soft tissue from each animal in each group, isolated and harvested for mechanical testing.

Biomechanical testing

Biomechanical analysis was performed by three-point bending mechanical tests. The experiments were conducted using a servo hydraulic MTS 858 Mini Bionix frame (MTS Systems, Eden Prairie, MN, United States). Tibiae were placed horizontally on the frame on rounded edges at a distance of 24 mm. Attention was paid to ensure all the specimens were placed in exactly the same manner with regards to position and orientation in an effort to minimize variability. The load was applied at the mid-shaft of the diaphysis using a punch with a rounded notch (Figure 1). The displacement control loading mode was selected. The rate of the imposed displacement was selected as 1 mm/min in an effort to simulate quasi-static loading conditions. The displacement was imposed continuously until fracture. The load-displacement curves and the maximal load at fracture in Newtons (N) were recorded. Failure was defined and observed by a propagation of an almost vertical fracture starting almost universally at the lower cortical bone surface. This is expected in bending tests of a brittle material because of the relatively lower tensile strengths compared to the respective opposite compressive strength.

Maximum force applied to failure (N), stiffness (N

× mm) and energy absorbed (N/mm) were recorded and plotted on load-displacement curves. The maximum load is represented by the maximum compressive force applied until fracture. Deformation (strain) was defined as the degree of transverse displacement at the loading point. The initial non-linear curve corresponds to the adaptation of the specimens on the rounded edges of the loading device. The almost perfectly linear portion represents the linear elastic behavior of the tissue and the slope is equal to the stiffness. The nonlinear portion corresponds to the non-elastic (plastic) behavior of the tissue.

Statistical analysis

Statistical analysis on the groups was conducted using analysis of variance. An overall *P* value of < 0.05 was considered to be statistically significant.

RESULTS

Weight and glucose measurements

Table 1 demonstrates weight measurements and glucose measurements of both groups over the experimental study period. An average increase of 155.2 g in body weight was observed in the C group compared with only 5 g in the D group during the experimental study period. Levels of blood glucose increased to 440.25 mg/dL in the D group compared to 116.62 mg/dL in the C group.

Biomechanical analysis

Table 2 summarizes the differences in maximum force to failure, stiffness and energy-absorbed values recorded between the two groups. Maximal load to failure in C was 69.5 ± 10.3 N (mean \pm SD) compared with a reduction to 58 ± 13.2 N (mean \pm SD) in the D group. This demonstrated a statistically significant difference (*P* = 0.011). Stiffness measurements demonstrated no significant differences between the two groups. A statistically significant reduction (*P* = 0.019) was observed in measurements for energy absorption from 28.2 ± 5 N in the control group to 23.5 ± 5.6 N in the D group.

DISCUSSION

Our experimental randomized controlled study demonstrated the effect of diabetes on bone strength.

The literature on the association between bone strength and fracture risk in DM remains weak. The bone changes directly observed in DM can be attributed to a multitude of interrelated factors. Both the material and geometric properties of bone are implicated in influencing mechanical strength. Macroscopic structure (size and shape), architecture (cortical and cancellous components) and the bone substance (organic and inorganic components) are all influenced by DM. Furthermore, changes in collagen, elastin and proteoglycan concentrations, formation of advanced glycation end products and the orienta-

Table 1 Weight and blood glucose comparison between groups

	Prior to induction		One weekpost-induction		Ateuthanasia	
	C group	D group	C group	D group	C group	D group
Weight (g)	263.5	272.5	367	284.7	418.7	277.5
Glucose (mg/dL)	135.5	128.5	121.37	359.37	116.62	440.25

C group: Control group; D group: Diabetic group.

Table 2 Summary of biomechanical data (mean \pm SD)

	Max force (N)	Stiffness (N \times mm)	Energy (N/mm)
Diabetic group	58.0 \pm 13.2	101.1 \pm 30.2	23.5 \pm 5.6
Control group	69.5 \pm 10.3	118.4 \pm 23.0	28.2 \pm 5.0
P value	0.011	0.082	0.019

tion of collagen fibers are all important determinants of mechanical integrity, which are also affected.

In our study, we aimed to directly quantify whether an uncontrolled diabetic state directly alters the mechanical properties of appendicular long bone of tibiae, to add to the quality of published evidence that DM adversely affects bone quality. Immature rodents were used in an attempt to mimic the presentation of DM in humans, which typically occurs prior to skeletal maturity. Wistar rats were selected for the animal model as this genotype represents a close homology to DM in humans. We observed statistically significant changes in the D group, with reductions in maximum force and energy absorbed to failure demonstrating that the DM alters mechanical properties after as little as 8 wk. Interestingly, in our study we found no statistically significant differences in stiffness between C and D groups. Reported information on stiffness is conflicting in the literature, with some demonstrating increased^[9] and other decreased values^[16,18]. These variances are confusing but may be accounted to a number of factors. Stiffness as an indicator of overall bone strength alone is not the only significant biomechanical factor that can be affected by diabetes. Taken in isolation, changes in stiffness may be a consequence of a reduction in total bone strength. Any decoupling of stiffness or strength as a ratio may account for the reported differences observed in studies. The changes to strength therefore may not only be an effect of material strength of the tissues but also as a consequence of differences in the size and shape of the bone being tested. When values for stiffness are normalized against the geometry and structural shape of the bone, these differences in stiffness can be accounted for.

A number of experimental rodent studies exist documenting the biomechanical effects of bone in streptozotocin induced DM. These studies exhibit various experimental protocols. To our knowledge, eight studies exist evaluating bone mechanics using a type 1 diabetic model in rodent studies^[9,14-16,19-22]. All these studies exhibit differences in their methodology, specifically duration of induced DM, species of rodent and diabetogen used

to initiate DM. However, despite their differences these studies consistently demonstrate reductions in ultimate force to failure in the D groups, in keeping with the result of our study. The three studies which report on values for energy to failure^[15,16,22] all demonstrate a reduction in energy to failure in the diabetic groups, in keeping with our analysis.

Our findings lend weight to the argument that DM (in a type 1 DM rodent model) reduces the mechanical behavior of bone. However, the changes that occur are probably not only to be result of changes in mechanical properties but are probably also due to inherent detrimental changes which occur in the structural material properties. This theory has been confirmed in a mouse model where significant differences were observed in the strength-structure relationship, with reductions to the tissue mineral density of bone in DM, which became apparent after only 10 wk^[23].

Our experimental model subjected the D group of rats to uncontrolled levels of hyperglycaemia. This experimental protocol represents a scenario, which would only be representative of the small proportion of the human DM population who poorly control their blood glucose levels. It is likely be that our experimental model represents a worse case scenario. Conversely the duration that the rats were exposed to an uncontrolled hyperglycaemic state was only 8 wk. This is unlikely to represent the chronic human diabetic state. It is possible that subjecting the animals to a longer period of hyperglycaemia would cause further deterioration in the material properties of bone. This has been confirmed by Nyman *et al.*^[23] in a mouse model exposed to DM for up to 18 wk, in which further deterioration in mechanical properties was observed with longer exposure.

There are several limitations to our study. Firstly the duration of induced DM was only 8 wk, which may not be representative of the changes that occur chronically. It could be postulated that any effects on mechanical properties could be under-estimated and the further detrimental changes could have occurred if DM was allowed to continue. The experimental model also represents a scenario where DM remains unchecked with hyperglycemia allowed to develop without control. This model is unlikely to be representative of a clinical scenario where DM is treated and therefore represents a worse case presentation. Furthermore, this study did not investigate the effects of DM on bone structure and architecture. No histomorphometric analysis was conducted to investigate

whether the mechanical changes to the material observed, exhibited correlation to bone quality.

Although the pathogenesis of osteopenia in diabetes is a poorly understood phenomenon, decreased bone formation, mineralization and absorption seem to be associated with inferior mechanical properties of bone turnover in diabetes. These changes may be not so frequently observed in humans, as most people do not allow serum glucose levels to go unchecked and manage DM with strict administration of insulin therapy. Significant changes to bone biomechanics may, therefore, only be representative of a small cohort of human diabetics who have long-standing prolonged disease which is resistant to or poorly controlled by insulin therapy.

The bones of streptozotocin-induced diabetic Wistar rats are more fragile with reduced toughness characterized by a reduction in the capacity to absorb energy and with lower force required to induce fracture, in comparison to those in the control group. Our findings confirm previous studies and add weight to the literature investigating the detrimental relationship between the mechanical properties of bone subjected to DM.

COMMENTS

Background

Clinical and experimental studies demonstrate that diabetes is associated with molecular and cellular changes with resultant alterations to bone physiology. Patients with type 1 diabetes mellitus (DM) have been observed to exhibit a disproportionately high risk of fracture with reduced bone mass, leading to speculation that diabetic bone has reduced strength. The resultant biomechanical changes and properties of bone in DM have been poorly addressed in the literature with conflicting results.

Research frontiers

Experimental studies demonstrating alterations to physiology and structural changes to bone in DM is sparse and conflicting. Uncontrolled DM has been suggested to result in detrimental biomechanical properties of bone. Furthermore, studies indicate that diabetes exerts a similar effect on bone to that observed in the normal ageing process, with a predisposition to fracture susceptibility, delayed union and osteoporosis.

Innovations and breakthroughs

This study lends weight to the literature that an uncontrolled DM state in a rodent population induced by streptozotocin results in reduction in the biomechanical properties of bone, specifically with reduction in ultimate strength to failure and capacity to absorb energy.

Applications

By understanding how an uncontrolled diabetic state detrimentally alters bone biomechanics, future strategies to target diabetic patients may result in better bone health and reduction in osteoporosis and fracture risk.

Terminology

Wistar rats represent a close homology to the human type 1 DM phenotype, demonstrating comparable genetic and physiological characteristics. Thus, they likely to be the closest animal model representative of an uncontrolled diabetic state in humans.

Peer review

The authors examined the effects of an induced DM state and its relationship to the biomechanical properties of bone. Results revealed decreased bone quality and reduction in energy absorbing capacity. The results are interesting and may represent a close homology to the effects seen in the bone health of patients who have DM.

REFERENCES

1 Gevins AS, Zeitlin GM, Yingling CD, Doyle JC, Dedon MF,

Schaffer RE, Roumasset JT, Yeager CL. EEG patterns during 'cognitive' tasks. I. Methodology and analysis of complex behaviors. *Electroencephalogr Clin Neurophysiol* 1979; **47**: 693-703 [PMID: 91498]

2 Fiorelli G, Orlando C, Benvenuti S, Franceschelli F, Bianchi S, Pioli P, Tanini A, Serio M, Bartucci F, Brandi ML. Characterization, regulation, and function of specific cell membrane receptors for insulin-like growth factor I on bone endothelial cells. *J Bone Miner Res* 1994; **9**: 329-337 [PMID: 8191926 DOI: 10.1002/jbmr.5650090307]

3 Hickman J, McElduff A. Insulin promotes growth of the cultured rat osteosarcoma cell line UMR-106-01: an osteoblast-like cell. *Endocrinology* 1989; **124**: 701-706 [PMID: 2536316 DOI: 10.1210/endo-124-2-701]

4 Peck WA, Messinger K. Nucleoside and ribonucleic acid metabolism in isolated bone cells. Effects of insulin and cortisol in vitro. *J Biol Chem* 1970; **245**: 2722-2729 [PMID: 5464041]

5 Levy JR, Murray E, Manolagas S, Olefsky JM. Demonstration of insulin receptors and modulation of alkaline phosphatase activity by insulin in rat osteoblastic cells. *Endocrinology* 1986; **119**: 1786-1792 [PMID: 3530724 DOI: 10.1210/endo-119-4-1786]

6 Garnero P, Borel O, Gineyts E, Duboeuf F, Solberg H, Bouxsein ML, Christiansen C, Delmas PD. Extracellular post-translational modifications of collagen are major determinants of biomechanical properties of fetal bovine cortical bone. *Bone* 2006; **38**: 300-309 [PMID: 16271523 DOI: 10.1016/j.bone.2005.09.014]

7 Vashishth D, Gibson GJ, Khoury JI, Schaffler MB, Kimura J, Fyhrie DP. Influence of nonenzymatic glycation on biomechanical properties of cortical bone. *Bone* 2001; **28**: 195-201 [PMID: 11182378 DOI: 10.1016/S8756-3282(00)00434-8]

8 Armas LA, Akhter MP, Drincic A, Recker RR. Trabecular bone histomorphometry in humans with Type 1 Diabetes Mellitus. *Bone* 2012; **50**: 91-96 [PMID: 22001578 DOI: 10.1016/j.bone.2011.09.055]

9 Funk JR, Hale JE, Carmines D, Gooch HL, Hurwitz SR. Biomechanical evaluation of early fracture healing in normal and diabetic rats. *J Orthop Res* 2000; **18**: 126-132 [PMID: 10716288 DOI: 10.1002/jor.1100180118]

10 Schwartz AV. Diabetes Mellitus: Does it Affect Bone? *Calcif Tissue Int* 2003; **73**: 515-519 [PMID: 14517715 DOI: 10.1007/s00223-003-0023-7]

11 Räkel A, Sheehy O, Rahme E, LeLorier J. Osteoporosis among patients with type 1 and type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Metab* 2008; **34**: 193-205 [PMID: 18308607 DOI: 10.1016/j.diabet.2007.10.008]

12 Fleischli JG, Laughlin TJ, Lavery LA, Shah B, Lanctot D, Agrawal CM, Athanasiou K. The effects of diabetes mellitus on the material properties of human metatarsal bones. *J Foot Ankle Surg* 1998; **37**: 195-198 [PMID: 9638543 DOI: 10.1016/S1067-2516(98)80110-5]

13 Fleischli JG, Laughlin TJ, Athanasiou K, Lanctot DR, Lavery L, Wang X, Agrawal CM. Effect of diabetes mellitus on the material properties of the distal tibia. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc* 2006; **96**: 91-95 [PMID: 16546944]

14 Silva MJ, Brodt MD, Lynch MA, McKenzie JA, Tanouye KM, Nyman JS, Wang X. Type 1 diabetes in young rats leads to progressive trabecular bone loss, cessation of cortical bone growth, and diminished whole bone strength and fatigue life. *J Bone Miner Res* 2009; **24**: 1618-1627 [PMID: 19338453 DOI: 10.1359/jbmr.090316]

15 Reddy GK, Stehno-Bittel L, Hamade S, Enwemeka CS. The biomechanical integrity of bone in experimental diabetes. *Diabetes Res Clin Pract* 2001; **54**: 1-8 [PMID: 11532324 DOI: 10.1016/S0168-8227(01)00273-X]

16 Einhorn TA, Boskey AL, Gundberg CM, Vigorita VJ, Devlin VJ, Beyer MM. The mineral and mechanical properties of bone in chronic experimental diabetes. *J Orthop Res* 1988; **6**: 317-323 [PMID: 3258636 DOI: 10.1002/jor.1100060303]

- 17 **Erdal N**, Gürgül S, Kavak S, Yildiz A, Emre M. Deterioration of bone quality by streptozotocin (STZ)-induced type 2 diabetes mellitus in rats. *Biol Trace Elem Res* 2011; **140**: 342-353 [PMID: 20446056 DOI: 10.1007/s12011-010-8703-4]
- 18 **Verhaeghe J**, Suiker AM, Einhorn TA, Geusens P, Visser WJ, Van Herck E, Van Bree R, Magitsky S, Bouillon R. Brittle bones in spontaneously diabetic female rats cannot be predicted by bone mineral measurements: studies in diabetic and ovariectomized rats. *J Bone Miner Res* 1994; **9**: 1657-1667 [PMID: 7817814 DOI: 10.1002/jbmr.5650091021]
- 19 **Beam HA**, Parsons JR, Lin SS. The effects of blood glucose control upon fracture healing in the BB Wistar rat with diabetes mellitus. *J Orthop Res* 2002; **20**: 1210-1216 [PMID: 12472231 DOI: 10.1016/S0736-0266(02)00066-9]
- 20 **Facchini DM**, Yuen VG, Battell ML, McNeill JH, Grynepas MD. The effects of vanadium treatment on bone in diabetic and non-diabetic rats. *Bone* 2006; **38**: 368-377 [PMID: 16256449 DOI: 10.1016/j.bone.2005.08.015]
- 21 **Macey LR**, Kana SM, Jingushi S, Terek RM, Borretos J, Bolland ME. Defects of early fracture-healing in experimental diabetes. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 1989; **71**: 722-733 [PMID: 2659600]
- 22 **Zhang SQ**, Chen GH, Lu WL, Zhang Q. Effects on the bones of vanadyl acetylacetonate by oral administration: a comparison study in diabetic rats. *J Bone Miner Metab* 2007; **25**: 293-301 [PMID: 17704994 DOI: 10.1007/s00774-007-0759-7]
- 23 **Nyman JS**, Even JL, Jo CH, Herbert EG, Murry MR, Cockrell GE, Wahl EC, Bunn RC, Lumpkin CK, Fowlkes JL, Thrailkill KM. Increasing duration of type 1 diabetes perturbs the strength-structure relationship and increases brittleness of bone. *Bone* 2011; **48**: 733-740 [PMID: 21185416 DOI: 10.1016/j.bone.2010.12.016]

P- Reviewer Laborde M S- Editor Zhai HH
L- Editor Hughes D E- Editor Ma S



Olecranon anatomy: Use of a novel proximal interlocking screw for intramedullary nailing, a cadaver study

Fatih Küçükdemir, Necdet Saglam, İsmail Ağır, Cengiz Sen, Fuat Akpınar

Fatih Küçükdemir, Cengiz Sen, Department of Orthopedics and Traumatology, Bezmialem Vakif University, 34093 Istanbul, Turkey

Necdet Saglam, Department of Orthopedics and Traumatology, Umraniye Research and Education Hospital, 34764 Istanbul, Turkey

İsmail Ağır, Department of Orthopaedics and Traumatology, Adiyaman University School of Medicine, 02040 Adiyaman, Turkey
Fuat Akpınar, Department of Orthopedics and Traumatology, Abant İzzet Baysal University, 14280 Bolu, Turkey

Author contributions: All authors contributed to conception and design, acquisition of data, or analysis and interpretation of data, drafting the article or revising it critically for important intellectual content and final approval of the version to be published.

Correspondence to: Dr. Fatih Küçükdemir, Department of Orthopaedics and Traumatology, Bezmialem Vakif University, Adnan Menderes Bulvarı, 34093 Istanbul, Turkey. fatihmfk@hotmail.com

Telephone: +90-212-4531700 Fax: +90-212-6217580

Received: March 1, 2013 Revised: April 15, 2013

Accepted: June 1, 2013

Published online: July 18, 2013

Abstract

AIM: To define the optimum safe angle of use for an eccentrically aligned proximal interlocking screw (PIS) for intramedullary nailing (IMN).

METHODS: Thirty-six dry cadaver ulnas were split into two equal pieces sagittally. The following points were identified for each ulna: the deepest point of the incisure olecrani (A), the point where perpendicular lines from A and the ideal IMN entry point (D) are intersected (C) and a point at 3.5 mm (2 mm safety distance from articular surface + 1.5 mm radius of PIS) posterior from point A (B). We calculated the angle of screws inserted from point D through to point B in relation to D-C and B-C. In addition, an eccentrically aligned screw was inserted at a standard 20° through the anterior cortex of the ulna in each bone and the articular surface was

observed macroscopically for any damage.

RESULTS: The mean A-C distance was 9.6 mm (mean \pm SD, 9.600 \pm 0.763 mm), A-B distance was 3.5 mm, C-D distance was 12.500 mm (12.500 \pm 1.371 mm) and the mean angle was 25.9° (25.9° \pm 2.0°). Lack of articular damage was confirmed macroscopically in all bones after the 20.0° eccentrically aligned screws were inserted. Intramedullary nail fixation systems have well known biological and biomechanical advantages for osteosynthesis. However, as well as these well-known advantages, IMN fixation of the ulna has some limitations. Some important limitations are related to the proximal interlocking of the ulna nail. The location of the PIS itself limits the indications for which intramedullary systems can be selected as an implant for the ulna. The new PIS design, where the PIS is aligned 20° eccentrically to the nail body, allows fixing of fractures even at the level of the olecranon without disturbing the joint. It also allows the eccentrically aligned screw to be inserted in any direction except through the proximal radio-ulnar joint. Taking into consideration our results, we now use a 20° eccentrically aligned PIS for all ulnas. In our results, the angle required to insert the PIS was less than 20° for only one bone. However, 0.7° difference corresponds to placement of the screw only 0.2 mm closer to the articular surface. As we assume 2.0 mm to be a safe distance, a placement of the screw 0.2 mm closer to the articular surface may not produce any clinical symptoms.

CONCLUSION: The new PIS may give us the opportunity to interlock IMN without articular damage and confirmation by fluoroscopy if the nail is manufactured with a PIS aligned at a 20.0° fixed angle in relation to the IMN.

© 2013 Baishideng. All rights reserved.

Key words: Interlocking screw; Intramedullary nailing; Ulna fracture; Ulna anatomy

Core tip: Limitations of intramedullary nailing (IMN) of the ulna, which make IMN a secondary choice, include problems experienced at the proximal interlocking screw (PIS). A new PIS system may solve most common problems with an eccentrically aligned screw. This new PIS system may be very advantageous if the fluoroscopy time, operation time and the need for additional incision in other systems is considered. However, the screw must be designed at a safe angle to have these advantages. According to our results, a 20.0° is the optimum angle of alignment for this screw.

Küçükdurmaz F, Sağlam N, Ağır İ, Sen C, Akpınar F. Olecranon anatomy: Use of a novel proximal interlocking screw for intramedullary nailing, a cadaver study. *World J Orthop* 2013; 4(3): 130-133 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjg-net.com/2218-5836/full/v4/i3/130.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5312/wjo.v4.i3.130>

INTRODUCTION

Intramedullary nailing (IMN) of the forearm has gained much popularity but still has some technical limitations, especially in relation to IMN of the ulna^[1,2]. The proximal interlocking screw (PIS) is one of the critical steps in IMN of the ulna. Location of the PIS limits the indications for which IMN of the ulna can be used with currently available IM systems. IM systems are useless in fractures where the olecranon is involved. In addition, IM systems may be insufficient in proximal ulna fractures and may require extra caution to avoid damage to the articular surface when placed around the olecranon^[1,2]. Currently available IMN systems of the ulna have the same inherent problems as all IMN, requiring an extra incision for the interlocking screw and prolonged radiation exposure of the surgical team because of the use of fluoroscopy.

A newly developed PIS system^[3] solves these problems with an eccentrically aligned PIS (Figure 1) which is inserted through a hole located at the proximal tip of the nail.

In this *in vitro* study, we aim to identify the optimum angle of the eccentrically aligned PIS to the IMN in relation to the olecranon articular surface.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Ulna bones of 36 dry bony cadavers were used. The proximal parts of the ulnas were split sagittally into two equal pieces. The deepest point of the incisura olecrani (A) was identified for each ulna. A horizontal line was drawn longitudinally at the middle of the medulla and a vertical line was drawn from point A perpendicular to this line. The point where these lines intersected (C) and the ideal IMN entry point (D) were also identified for each ulna. Then a point (B) was identified, located on the A-C line and 3.5 mm posterior to point A. 3.5 mm is the sum safe distance from the articular surface (2 mm) and the radius of PIS (1.5 mm) (Figure 2). Then, we calcu-



Figure 1 Eccentrically aligned proximal interlocking screw.

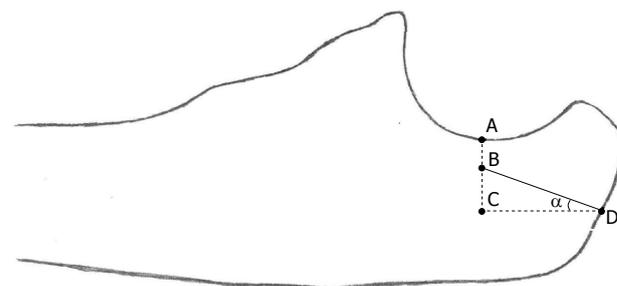


Figure 2 Olecranon anatomy, related to a novel proximal interlocking screw for intramedullary nailing. A: Deepest point of the incisura olecrani; B: The point, which is 3.5 mm posterior to A point and targeted during insertion of the proximal interlocking screw; C: The point where the line from the middle of the medulla and the line perpendicular to point A intersect; D: Ideal entry point for intramedullary nail.

lated the angles of the screws when inserted from point D through to point B using the following formula: $\tan \alpha = B-C/C-D$ (Figure 2).

In addition, taking into consideration the measured angles, a screw aligned eccentrically in relation to the IMN was inserted at a standard 20° through the anterior cortex of the ulna in each bone as a PIS and the articular surface was observed macroscopically for any damage.

RESULTS

The mean A-C distance was 9.600 mm (range 8.500-11.000 mm, SD = 0.763 mm). The mean A-B distance was 3.5 mm for each ulna. The mean C-D distance was 12.500 mm (range 10.000-14.600 mm, SD = 1.371 mm). The mean angle was 25.9° (range 19.3°-29.2°, SD = 2.0°) (Table 1). Lack of articular damage was observed macroscopically for each bone after the 20.0° eccentrically aligned screws were inserted.

DISCUSSION

Intramedullary nail fixation systems have well known biological and biomechanical advantages for osteosynthesis. However, in addition to these well-known advantages, intramedullary nail fixation of the ulna has some limitations^[1,2]. Some important limitations are related to the PI of the ulna nail. The location of the PIS itself limits the indications for which intramedullary systems can be selected as an implant for the ulna.

Table 1 The A-C distance, C-D distance and angle for each ulna

Ulna No.	A-C distance (mm)	C-D distance (mm)	Angle (°)
1	9.7	11.2	24.9
2	9.4	13.8	23.1
3	9.0	12.0	24.6
4	8.5	14.3	19.3
5	8.9	13.4	21.9
6	11.0	14.6	27.2
7	10.1	13.6	25.9
8	10.4	12.4	29.1
9	11.0	13.4	29.2
10	11.0	14.6	27.2
11	9.0	11.7	25.2
12	8.7	10.6	26.1
13	10.2	14.0	25.6
14	10.5	13.2	27.9
15	9.3	12.9	24.2
16	9.8	12.4	26.9
17	10.0	14.5	24.1
18	9.5	12.8	25.1
19	9.5	12.7	25.3
20	8.8	10.7	26.3
21	10.1	13.5	26.0
22	11.0	14.5	27.3
23	9.0	10.7	27.2
24	9.6	12.1	26.7
25	9.9	12.5	27.1
26	8.7	11.3	24.7
27	8.9	10.2	27.9
28	10.8	13.6	28.2
29	9.0	11.0	26.6
30	9.0	10.6	27.4
31	8.9	10.1	28.1
32	8.6	12.5	22.2
33	9.3	12.7	24.5
34	10.1	13.1	26.7
35	9.8	12.4	26.9
36	8.7	10.0	27.4
Total, mean ± SD (range)	9,600 ± 0.763 (8.500-11.000)	12,500 ± 1.371 (10.000-14.600)	25.9 ± 2.0 (19.3-29.2)

Intramedullary fixation systems are inadequate for fractures of the proximal ulna especially if the olecranon is involved. There is usually not enough bone stock to put a PIS into proximal fractures even if the fracture is slightly distal to the olecranon^[4]. If the fracture is to the proximal part of the ulna or at the level of the olecranon, the screw should be inserted perpendicular or oblique to the articular surface^[5-7]. This requires the selection of a PIS to avoid disturbing the joint, and this may not provide adequate stability. Moreover, there may be irritation of the ulnar nerve if the PIS is aligned parallel to the articular surface of the olecranon^[5]. Gehr and Friedl developed an intramedullary device for olecranon fractures, although this device cannot be used for segmental fractures, which also involve distal fractures, and they reported ulnar nerve irritation. The new PIS design allows the fixing of fractures even at the level of the olecranon without disturbing the joint when the PIS is aligned 20.0° eccentrically to the nail body. It also allows the eccentrically aligned screw to be inserted in any direction except through the proximal radio-ulnar joint.

Radiation exposure tends to be underestimated by

surgeons^[8,9]. Proximal interlocking always requires fluoroscopic confirmation. Currently available intramedullary nails for the ulna require quite long fluoroscopy time, even up to 150 min^[7]. By contrast, with the new PIS system fluoroscopy usage is optional, provided preoperative measurements are done properly.

The PIS usually requires an additional incision^[6,10,11]. In the new PIS system, the screw is inserted from the proximal tip of the nail. There is no need for an additional incision for PI other than the incision used for insertion of the IM nail, which means no additional soft tissue damage.

An eccentrically aligned PIS with a fixed angle may provide important advantages. The angle between the nail and screw has critical importance to the articular surface of the olecranon.

Taking into consideration our results, we use a 20° eccentrically aligned PIS for all ulnas by. In our results, the angle required to send the PIS was less than 20° (19.3°) for only one bone (No. 4). However, 0.7° difference corresponds to placement of screw only 0.2 mm closer to the articular surface. As we assume 2.0 mm to be a safe distance, a 0.2 mm closer placement of the screw to the articular surface may not produce any clinical symptoms. Moreover, as far as we know, there are no previous studies which have considered the safe distance between the screw and the articular surface of the olecranon. As a result, the lack of macroscopic articular surface damage in case 4, like all others, may be evidence of the safety of this system.

As a result, this new PIS system may be very advantageous if the fluoroscopy time, operation time and the need for additional incision compared to other systems is considered. However, the screw must be positioned at a safe angle to have these advantages. According to our results, a 20° is the optimum angle of alignment for the screw.

COMMENTS

Background

Intramedullary nail fixation systems have well known biological and biomechanical advantages for osteosynthesis. Limitations of intramedullary nailing (IMN) of the ulna, which makes IMN a secondary choice, include problems experienced at the proximal interlocking screw (PIS).

Research frontiers

Location of the PIS limits the indications for use of IMN of the ulna in currently available intramedullary systems. A new PIS system may solve most common problems with an eccentrically aligned screw. The purpose of this *in vitro* study was to define the optimum safe angle of eccentrically aligned PIS for IMN.

Innovations and breakthroughs

Intramedullary systems may be insufficient in proximal ulna fractures and may require extra caution not to damage the articular surface when placed around the olecranon. Currently available IMN systems of the ulna have the same inherent problems as all IMN, requiring an extra incision for the interlocking screw and prolonged radiation exposure of the surgical team because of the use of fluoroscopy. The new PIS may give the authors the opportunity to interlock the IMN without articular damage and confirmation by fluoroscopy if the nail is manufactured with a PIS aligned at a 20° fixed angle in relation to the IMN.

Applications

The new PIS design allows fixing fractures even at the level of the olecranon without articular damage and confirmation of fluoroscopy.

Terminology

Intramedullary nailing: A rod of metal, or other material for fixation of fragments

of fractured bones, in this study for ulna fractures. Interlocking screw: A screw which passes through the IMN perpendicular to its long axis and prevents the nail to migrate or rotate within the bone.

Peer review

This new PIS system may be very advantageous if the fluoroscopy time, operation time and the need for additional incision at other systems is considered. However, it must be designed at a safe angle to have these advantages. According to these results, 20° is the optimum angle of alignment for this screw.

REFERENCES

- 1 **Hong G**, Cong-Feng L, Hui-Peng S, Cun-Yi F, Bing-Fang Z. Treatment of diaphyseal forearm nonunions with interlocking intramedullary nails. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2006; **450**: 186-192 [PMID: 16523119 DOI: 10.1097/01.blo.0000214444.87645.75]
- 2 **Lee YH**, Lee SK, Chung MS, Baek GH, Gong HS, Kim KH. Interlocking contoured intramedullary nail fixation for selected diaphyseal fractures of the forearm in adults. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2008; **90**: 1891-1898 [PMID: 18762649 DOI: 10.2106/JBJS.G.01636]
- 3 **Akpınar F**. New multifunctional locking intramedullary nailing system for ulna. *Med J Umraniye* 2008; **1**: 39-42
- 4 **Akpınar F**, Aydinlioglu A, Tosun N, Tuncay I. Morphologic evaluation of the ulna. *Acta Orthop Scand* 2003; **74**: 415-419 [PMID: 14521291 DOI: 10.1080/00016470310017712]
- 5 **Gehr J**, Friedl W. Intramedullary locking compression nail for the treatment of an olecranon fracture. *Oper Orthop Traumatol* 2006; **18**: 199-213 [PMID: 16953346 DOI: 10.1007/s00064-006-1171-5]
- 6 **Weckbach A**, Blattert TR, Weisser Ch. Interlocking nailing of forearm fractures. *Arch Orthop Trauma Surg* 2006; **126**: 309-315 [PMID: 16525808 DOI: 10.1007/s00402-006-0122-9]
- 7 **Dalal S**, Stanley D. Locked intramedullary nailing in the treatment of olecranon nonunion: a new method of treatment. *J Shoulder Elbow Surg* 2004; **13**: 366-368 [PMID: 15111912 DOI: 10.1016/j.jse.2004.01.006]
- 8 **Hafez MA**, Smith RM, Matthews SJ, Kalap G, Sherman KP. Radiation exposure to the hands of orthopaedic surgeons: are we underestimating the risk? *Arch Orthop Trauma Surg* 2005; **125**: 330-335 [PMID: 15843947 DOI: 10.1007/s00402-005-0807-5]
- 9 **Blattert TR**, Fill UA, Kunz E, Panzer W, Weckbach A, Regulla DF. Skill dependence of radiation exposure for the orthopaedic surgeon during interlocking nailing of long-bone shaft fractures: a clinical study. *Arch Orthop Trauma Surg* 2004; **124**: 659-664 [PMID: 15365718 DOI: 10.1007/s00402-004-0743-9]
- 10 **Bansal H**. Intramedullary fixation of forearm fractures with new locked nail. *Indian J Orthop* 2011; **45**: 410-416 [PMID: 21886921 DOI: 10.4103/0019-5413.83760]
- 11 **Visna P**, Beitel E, Smídl Z, Kalvach J, Jaganjac E. Revision surgery in diaphyseal forearm fractures. *Acta Chir Orthop Traumatol Cech* 2007; **74**: 342-348 [PMID: 18001632]

P- Reviewers Erkan S, Kumar P **S- Editor** Gou SX
L- Editor Hughes D **E- Editor** Ma S



Comparison of straight median sternotomy and interlocking sternotomy with respect to biomechanical stability

Fatih Küçükdurmaz, İsmail Ağır, Murat Bezer

Fatih Küçükdurmaz, Clinic of Orthopaedics and Traumatology, Bezmialem Vakif University, School of Medicine, Istanbul 34093, Turkey

İsmail Ağır, Departments of Orthopaedics and Traumatology, Adiyaman University School of Medicine, Adiyaman 02040, Turkey

Murat Bezer, Departments of Orthopaedics and Traumatology, Marmara University School of Medicine, Pendik 34899, Istanbul, Turkey

Author contributions: All authors contributed to conception and design, acquisition of data, or analysis and interpretation of data; drafting the article or revising it critically for important intellectual content and final approval of the version to be published.

Correspondence to: Dr. Fatih Küçükdurmaz, Clinic of Orthopaedics and Traumatology, Bezmialem Vakif University, School of Medicine, Adnan Menderes Blv, Istanbul 34093, Turkey. fatihmfk@hotmail.com

Telephone: +90-212-4531700 Fax: +90-212-6217580

Received: March 1, 2013 Revised: April 15, 2013

Accepted: June 1, 2013

Published online: July 18, 2013

Abstract

AIM: To increase the stability of sternotomy and so decrease the complications because of instability.

METHODS: Tests were performed on 20 fresh sheep sterna which were isolated from the sterno-costal joints of the ribs. Median straight and interlocking sternotomies were performed on 10 sterna each, set as groups 1 and 2, respectively. Both sternotomies were performed with an oscillating saw and closed at three points with a No. 5 straight stainless-steel wiring. Fatigue testing was performed in cranio-caudal, antero-posterior (AP) and lateral directions by a computerized materials-testing machine cycling between loads of 0 to 400 N per 5 s (0.2 Hz). The amount of displacement in AP, lateral and cranio-caudal directions were measured and also the op-

posing bone surface at the osteotomy areas were calculated at the two halves of sternum.

RESULTS: The mean displacement in cranio-caudal direction was 9.66 ± 3.34 mm for median sternotomy and was 1.26 ± 0.97 mm for interlocking sternotomy, $P < 0.001$. The mean displacement in AP direction was 9.12 ± 2.74 mm for median sternotomy and was 1.20 ± 0.55 mm for interlocking sternotomy, $P < 0.001$. The mean displacement in lateral direction was 8.95 ± 3.86 mm for median sternotomy and was 7.24 ± 2.43 mm for interlocking sternotomy, $P > 0.001$. The mean surface area was 10.40 ± 0.49 cm² for median sternotomy and was 16.8 ± 0.78 cm² for interlocking sternotomy, $P < 0.001$. The displacement in AP and cranio-caudal directions is less in group 2 and it is statistically significant. Displacement in lateral direction in group 2 is less but it is statistically not significant. Surface area in group 2 is significantly wider than group 1.

CONCLUSION: Our test results demonstrated improved primary stability and wider opposing bone surfaces in interlocking sternotomy compared to median sternotomy. This method may provide better healing and less complication rates in clinical setting, further studies are necessary for its clinical implications.

© 2013 Baishideng. All rights reserved.

Key words: Median sternotomy; Interlocking sternotomy; Stability; Osseous healing; Biomechanics

Core tip: Sternal healing after median sternotomy can be compromised by an unstable closure. In this *in vitro* study, we found that the biomechanical characteristics of the median interlocking sternotomy were superior to those of the straight median sternotomy. The zigzag cuts made the sternotomy line significantly more stable and provided more surface area

for bony healing. These improved features are highly associated with improved bony healing. We believe that the interlocking sternotomy will decrease the complications associated with sternotomy in clinical basis by providing a better bony healing.

Küçükdurmaz F, Ağır İ, Bezer M. Comparison of straight median sternotomy and interlocking sternotomy with respect to biomechanical stability. *World J Orthop* 2013; 4(3): 134-138 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-5836/full/v4/i3/134.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5312/wjo.v4.i3.134>

INTRODUCTION

Median sternotomies are the most commonly performed osteotomy in the world^[1]. Sternotomy is the best trans-sternal approach for accessing lesions localized to the vertebral bodies of the upper thoracic spine^[2,3], and it is a standard incision for thoracic and cardiac surgery.

Despite the popularity of median sternotomy, complications such as nonunion, persistent pain, and infection occur in 0.3% to 5% of cases and are associated with a 14% to 47% mortality rate if mediastinitis supervenes^[4]. The morbidity, mortality, and expenses associated with these complications continue to make their prevention and treatment of great importance.

The continuous motion between the halves of the divided sternum resulting from the lack of immobilization causes postoperative sternal instability^[5], which is the most important factor in postoperative morbidity and mortality. Providing greater stability^[3,4,6] and promoting primary osseous healing is crucial for preventing these complications^[7-11].

More than 40 different techniques have been described for closing median sternotomy^[12-16]. The biomechanical characteristics of different sternal closures may substantially improve sternotomy reduction and stability^[17-19]. In particular, interlocking sternotomy appears to offer better stability and greater surface area for bone healing than other techniques. However, the biomechanical characteristics of this technique have not been assessed. Accordingly, in this experimental study, we compared the biomechanical characteristics of interlocking sternal closure with those of straight sternal closure in a study of sheep sterna.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

We obtained sterna freshly isolated from the sterno-costal joints of the ribs of 20 sheep (*Ovis ammon aries*) in same age and weight from slaughterhouse. We had institutional ethical approval from Marmara University ethical committee. Median straight (Figure 1A) and interlocking (Figure 1B) sternotomies were performed on 10 sterna each.

Sternotomy procedure

Interlocking sternotomy was created with 3 zigzag oste-

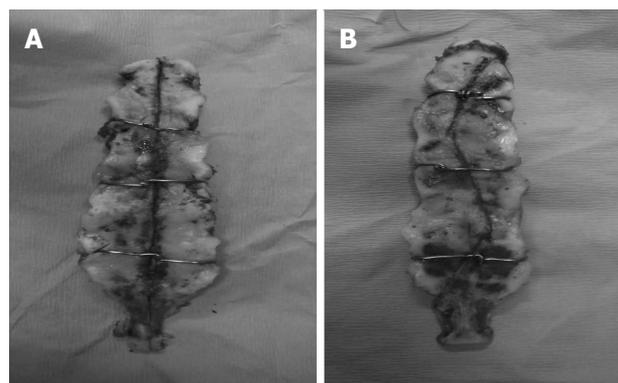


Figure 1 Sternotomy. A: Fixated median straight sternotomy, anterior view; B: Fixated interlocking sternotomy, anterior view.

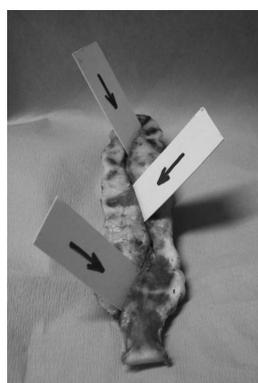


Figure 2 Sternotomy planes of interlocking sternotomy. Each zigzag osteotomy line was perpendicular to the previous line in the axial plane, which are showed with arrows.

otomy lines approximately 150 degrees to each other in the coronal plane. Each osteotomy line was perpendicular to the previous line in the axial plane (Figure 2). Median sternotomy was performed as a straight osteotomy line in the cranio-caudal (CC) direction. We measured the dimension of the cut surface and simply calculated the area of surface for interlocking sternotomy and median sternotomy.

Both sternotomies were performed with an oscillating saw and closed at three points with No. 5 straight stainless-steel wiring (Figure 1). The wire tension during closure is done by free hand, with 5 times twisting the wire for each suture.

The sterna were attached to custom fixtures designed to produce displacement in one of three directions: (1) CC shear; (2) antero-posterior (AP) shear; and (3) lateral (distraction) shear. The test was done in CC, AP and distraction directions sequentially. The fixtures designed to have 3 grasping jigs in 3 directions like the x , y and z dimensions.

Biomechanical testing

Fatigue testing was performed by a computerized materials-testing machine (High Capacity 8802, Instron, Norwood, MA, United States). The sterna were attached (Figure 3) to custom fixtures designed to produce dis-

Table 1 Biomechanical characteristics of median sternotomies in fresh sheep sterna 4 d after surgery

Characteristic	Median straight sternotomy (<i>n</i> = 8), mean (range)	Median interlocking sternotomy (<i>n</i> = 8), mean (range)	Difference (95%CI)
CC displacement, mm	9.66 ± 3.34 (5.24 to 15.35)	1.26 ± 0.97 (0.3 to 2.8)	6.08 to 10.71 <i>P</i> < 0.001
AP displacement, mm	9.12 ± 2.74 (5.48 to 14.78)	1.20 ± 0.55 (0.3 to 2.5)	6.06 to 9.77 <i>P</i> < 0.001
Lateral displacement, mm	8.95 ± 3.86 (5.1 to 17.1)	7.24 ± 2.43 (3.26 to 11.11)	-1.32 to 4.74 <i>P</i> > 0.001
Surface area, cm ²	10.40 ± 0.49 (9.6 to 10.9)	16.8 ± 0.78 (15.3 to 18.3)	-7.01 to 5.78 <i>P</i> < 0.001

CC: Cranio-caudal; AP: Anterio-posterior.

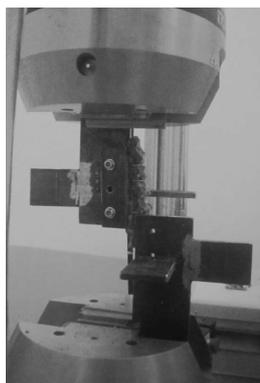


Figure 3 The sterna were attached to custom fixtures designed to produce displacement in one of three directions.

placement in one of three directions: (1) CC shear; (2) AP shear; and (3) lateral (distraction) shear. The displacement between the halves of the sternum was measured and recorded automatically by the testing device.

Fatigue testing was performed by cycling between loads of 1 and 400 N per 5 s (0.2 Hz) for 60 cycles of distraction and release. One sterna in each group was distracted for 180 cycles. The test was ended if the wires were torn from the bone or if the bone broke.

Statistical analysis

Mean displacement was measured after completion of distraction in all three directions and was compared between the two groups with Student's *t* test for independent groups. The data conformed to the assumptions of the *t* test, and all tests were two-tailed. Alpha was set at 0.05. The "SPSS 16.0" statistical software program was used in the analyses was used.

RESULTS

Two sterna in each group broke during the calibration of the testing machine so they were excluded from analyses. Fractures were related to fixation apparatus not related to test, and after the fractures it was revised and test began from the beginning. Displacement in all directions was smaller in the interlocking sternotomies (Table 1).

The mean displacement in CC direction was 9.66 ± 3.34 mm for median sternotomy and was 1.26 ± 0.97 mm for interlocking sternotomy, *P* < 0.001. The mean displacement in AP direction was 9.12 ± 2.74 mm for median sternotomy and was 1.20 ± 0.55 mm for interlocking sternotomy,

P < 0.001. The mean displacement in lateral direction was 8.95 ± 3.86 mm for median sternotomy and was 7.24 ± 2.43 mm for interlocking sternotomy, *P* > 0.001. The mean surface area was 10.40 ± 0.49 cm² for median sternotomy and was 16.80 ± 0.78 cm² for interlocking sternotomy, *P* < 0.001. The displacement in AP and cranio-caudal directions is less in group 2 and it is statistically significant. Displacement in lateral direction in group 2 is less but it is statistically not significant. Surface area in group 2 is significantly wider than group 1.

DISCUSSION

Normal breathing, coughing, and movement apply pressure to the sternum, creating a combination of lateral displacement forces and anterior-posterior shear and cranial-caudal shear^[20]. After sternotomy, these forces can interfere with bony healing and cause serious complications^[21-23]. An unstable sternotomy can increase post-operative sternal pain, which can lead to atelectasis and pneumonia, secondary to a decreased inspiratory effort^[9]. Other serious complications related to instability include sternal dehiscence, deep sternal infection, fulminant mediastinitis, osteomyelitis, and chronic sternal instability^[4,24-26]. These complications are associated with a 14% to 47% mortality rate^[4]. Providing a more stable osteotomy and improving sternal osteosynthesis is the best way to prevent these complications^[3,4,27,28].

More than 40 different techniques with various materials have been described for sternal closure^[12-16]. Most techniques revolve around a different pattern of wire cerclage, rigid plate fixation, or various non-rigid methods of closure^[29-36]. The techniques those provide more rigid fixation are associated with relatively fewer wound infection and even mortality^[3]. However, one has to consider the movements of sternal halves at AP and CC directions. Current methods provide sufficient lateral stability, but does not provide adequate AP and CC stability^[20]. Due to this three dimensional movement of sternum during physiological activities, providing stability in AP and CC directions is important as well as stability in lateral direction.

The sternal fixation with using plate and screw provides relatively more stability in AP and CC directions. However, this method has some serious disadvantages^[3]. Drilling into the sternum increases the obvious risks to the heart and bypass conduits^[3], and the costs of plate fixation are about 10 times higher than those of wire fixation^[6]. In addition, the screw holes closest to the midline tend to break through the adjacent bone^[6]. That is

why the plate and screw fixation does not gain popularity. Also, in an *in vitro* study, Saito *et al*^[35] compared wire fixation with wire fixation plus an intrasternal pin. The intrasternal pin was presented, as a technical modification required increasing stiffness in the AP and CC directions. Intrasternal pin fixation did provide significantly more stability than did wire fixation alone. However, the clinical application of this technique is not reported yet.

Current methods aiming to increase the stability of sternotomy are focused on different implants and configuration of suturing with wire. On the other hand, it is well known that, improving the stability of an osteotomy line can be increased by selecting the correct osteotomy technique^[37,38]. In our study, we focused on decreasing AP and CC interfragmentary motion at the same time by changing the configuration of the osteotomy line itself. In our literature search we determined, two clinical studies have shown that the stability of the sterna can be increased by the sternotomy configuration itself. Joshi *et al*^[36] performed a lazy-S-shaped sternotomy, which minimized post-operative pain, was also associated with better respiratory function, and reduced rates of sternal dehiscence and mediastinitis. Lee *et al*^[39] performed curvilinear paramedian sternotomy and found this technique ensuring precise open reduction and internal fixation. These results may indicate that the changing the sternotomy technique prevents CC motion, on the other hand, these sternotomy techniques still does not prevent the AP motion.

In our study, we focused on decreasing AP and CC interfragmentary motion at the same time by changing the configuration of the osteotomy line itself. The interlocking osteotomy created an inherently more stable closure that was less affected by displacement and shear forces and that provided a greater mean surface area than that provided by straight sternotomies. Although the interlocking sternotomy indirectly reduced lateral displacement, the amount of displacement was not statistically significant.

Increasing the opposing surface areas of an osteotomy is important for primary bone healing^[36]. The interlocking sternotomy maximizes the opposing surfaces of the sternal halves. By preventing the slippage of sternal ends in the AP and CC directions, the interlocking sternotomy ensures appropriate approximation during closing and should substantially improve the osseous healing.

In this *in vitro* study, we found that the biomechanical characteristics of the median interlocking sternotomy were superior to those of the straight median sternotomy. The zigzag cuts made the sternotomy line significantly more stable and provided more surface area for bony healing. Our method does not require any extra equipments or implants. The wires are used as fixation material, already employed and the surgeons are familiar with. Also this technique does not require surgeons to make great changes in their routine practice. It is possible to make this sternum incision with sternotomy saws in routine use. We believe that the interlocking sternotomy provide a significantly more stable sternotomy without extra costs. Although no clinical or animal experiment study has been performed with interlocking sternotomy, our biomechanical study may be evidence of superiority in primary

osseous healing if interlocking sternotomy is performed in clinical practice.

COMMENTS

Background

The continuous motion between the halves of the divided sternum resulting from the lack of immobilization causes postoperative sternal instability, which is the most important factor in postoperative morbidity and mortality. Providing greater stability and more surface area promoting primary osseous healing is crucial for preventing these complications.

Research frontiers

Interlocking sternotomy appears to offer better stability and greater surface area for bone healing than other techniques. However, the biomechanical characteristics of this technique have not been assessed. In this study, authors compared the biomechanical characteristics of interlocking sternal closure with those of straight sternal closure in a study of sheep sterna and compared the surface area of two osteotomies.

Innovations and breakthroughs

More than 40 different techniques with various materials have been described for sternal closure. The techniques those provide more rigid fixation are associated with relatively fewer wound infection and even mortality. Current methods provide sufficient lateral stability, but do not provide adequate antero-posterior (AP) and cranio-caudal (CC) stability. Interlocking sternal closure provide stability in AP, CC and in lateral direction and more surface area.

Applications

Authors believe that the interlocking sternotomy provide a significantly more stable sternotomy and more surface area for bony healing so decreasing the complications without extra costs.

Terminology

The interlocking sternotomy is a zigzag cut in three dimension. CC movement is a movement of one half of sternum superior while the other half inferior.

Peer review

The sterna were attached to custom fixtures designed to produce displacement in one of three directions: (1) CC shear, (2) AP shear, and (3) lateral (distraction) shear. The displacement between the halves of the sternum was measured and recorded automatically by the testing device. The zigzag cuts made the sternotomy line significantly more stable and provided more surface area for bony healing.

REFERENCES

- 1 **Raman J**, Straus D, Song DH. Rigid plate fixation of the sternum. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2007; **84**: 1056-1058 [PMID: 17720442 DOI: 10.1016/j.athoracsur.2006.11.045]
- 2 **Cauchois J**, Binet JP. Anterior Surgical Approaches to the Spine. *Ann R Coll Surg Engl* 1957; **21**: 237-243 [PMID: 19310112]
- 3 **Stephen M**, Papadopoulos F, Fesler RG. Surgical approaches and exposures of the vertebral column. In: Benzel EC. *Spine surgery*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone, 1999: 157-169
- 4 **Losanoff JE**, Richman BW, Jones JW. Disruption and infection of median sternotomy: a comprehensive review. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg* 2002; **21**: 831-839 [PMID: 12062271 DOI: 10.1016/S1010-7940(02)00124-0]
- 5 **El-Ansary D**, Waddington G, Adams R. Measurement of non-physiological movement in sternal instability by ultrasound. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2007; **83**: 1513-1516 [PMID: 17383368 DOI: 10.1016/j.athoracsur.2006.10.058]
- 6 **Song DH**, Lohman RF, Renucci JD, Jeevanandam V, Raman J. Primary sternal plating in high-risk patients prevents mediastinitis. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg* 2004; **26**: 367-372 [PMID: 15296898 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejcts.2004.04.038]
- 7 **Negri A**, Manfredi J, Terrini A, Rodella G, Bisleri G, El Quarra S, Muneretto C. Prospective evaluation of a new sternal closure method with thermoreactive clips. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg* 2002; **22**: 571-575 [PMID: 12297174 DOI: 10.1016/S1010-7940(02)00411-6]
- 8 **Sharma R**, Puri D, Panigrahi BP, Virdi IS. A modified para-

- sternal wire technique for prevention and treatment of sternal dehiscence. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2004; **77**: 210-213 [PMID: 14726063 DOI: 10.1016/S0003-4975(03)01339-0]
- 9 **Ozaki W**, Buchman SR, Iannettoni MD, Frankenburg EP. Biomechanical study of sternal closure using rigid fixation techniques in human cadavers. *Ann Thorac Surg* 1998; **65**: 1660-1665 [PMID: 9647077 DOI: 10.1016/S0003-4975(98)00231-8]
 - 10 **Casha AR**, Yang L, Kay PH, Saleh M, Cooper GJ. A biomechanical study of median sternotomy closure techniques. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg* 1999; **15**: 365-369 [PMID: 10333037 DOI: 10.1016/S1010-7940(99)00014-7]
 - 11 **Cheng W**, Cameron DE, Warden KE, Fonger JD, Gott VL. Biomechanical study of sternal closure techniques. *Ann Thorac Surg* 1993; **55**: 737-740 [PMID: 8452440 DOI: 10.1016/0003-4975(93)90285-P]
 - 12 **Franco S**, Herrera AM, Atehortúa M, Vélez L, Botero J, Jaramillo JS, Vélez JF, Fernández H. Use of steel bands in sternotomy closure: implications in high-risk cardiac surgical population. *Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg* 2009; **8**: 200-205 [PMID: 19038981 DOI: 10.1510/icvts.2008.188136]
 - 13 **López Almodóvar LE**, Bustos G, Lima P, Cañas A, Paredes I, Buendía JA. Transverse plate fixation of sternum: a new sternal-sparing technique. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2008; **86**: 1016-1017 [PMID: 18721609 DOI: 10.1016/j.athoracsur.2008.02.046]
 - 14 **Voss B**, Bauernschmitt R, Will A, Krane M, Kröss R, Brockmann G, Libera P, Lange R. Sternal reconstruction with titanium plates in complicated sternal dehiscence. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg* 2008; **34**: 139-145 [PMID: 18455410 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejcts.2008.03.030]
 - 15 **Lundy JB**, Gallo DR, Eastman DP, Perkins JH. The use of rigid sternal fixation for complex poststernotomy wounds and a military-unique fracture at an Army medical center. *Mil Med* 2007; **172**: 1125-1128 [PMID: 17985780]
 - 16 **Hallock GG**, Szydłowski GW. Rigid fixation of the sternum using a new coupled titanium transverse plate fixation system. *Ann Plast Surg* 2007; **58**: 640-644 [PMID: 17522487 DOI: 10.1097/01.sap.0000248134.37753.1a]
 - 17 **Fawzy H**, Osei-Tutu K, Errett L, Latter D, Bonneau D, Musgrave M, Mahoney J. Sternal plate fixation for sternal wound reconstruction: initial experience (retrospective study). *J Cardiothorac Surg* 2011; **6**: 63 [PMID: 21529357 DOI: 10.1186/1749-8090-6-63]
 - 18 **Tekümit H**, Cenal AR, Tataroğlu C, Uzun K, Akinci E. Comparison of figure-of-eight and simple wire sternal closure techniques in patients with non-microbial sternal dehiscence. *Anadolu Kardiyol Derg* 2009; **9**: 411-416 [PMID: 19819794]
 - 19 **Losanoff JE**, Basson MD, Gruber SA, Huff H, Hsieh FH. Single wire versus double wire loops for median sternotomy closure: experimental biomechanical study using a human cadaveric model. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2007; **84**: 1288-1293 [PMID: 17888985 DOI: 10.1016/j.athoracsur.2007.05.023]
 - 20 **Brevins EC**. Anatomy of thorax. In: Shields TW, LoCicero J, Ponn RB. General thoracic surgery. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2001: 3-7
 - 21 **Grossi EA**, Culliford AT, Krieger KH, Kloth D, Press R, Baumann FG, Spencer FC. A survey of 77 major infectious complications of median sternotomy: a review of 7,949 consecutive operative procedures. *Ann Thorac Surg* 1985; **40**: 214-223 [PMID: 4037913 DOI: 10.1016/S0003-4975(10)60030-6]
 - 22 **Fariñas MC**, Gald Peralta F, Bernal JM, Rabasa JM, Revuelta JM, González-Macías J. Suppurative mediastinitis after open-heart surgery: a case-control study covering a seven-year period in Santander, Spain. *Clin Infect Dis* 1995; **20**: 272-279 [PMID: 7742429 DOI: 10.1093/clinids/20.2.272]
 - 23 **Ottino G**, De Paulis R, Pansini S, Rocca G, Tallone MV, Comoglio C, Costa P, Orzan F, Morea M. Major sternal wound infection after open-heart surgery: a multivariate analysis of risk factors in 2,579 consecutive operative procedures. *Ann Thorac Surg* 1987; **44**: 173-179 [PMID: 3619541 DOI: 10.1016/S0003-4975(10)62035-8]
 - 24 **Bitkover CY**, Gårdlund B. Mediastinitis after cardiovascular operations: a case-control study of risk factors. *Ann Thorac Surg* 1998; **65**: 36-40 [PMID: 9456092 DOI: 10.1016/S0003-4975(97)01003-5]
 - 25 **Stoney WS**, Alford WC, Burrus GR, Frist RA, Thomas CS. Median sternotomy dehiscence. *Ann Thorac Surg* 1978; **26**: 421-426 [PMID: 380487 DOI: 10.1016/S0003-4975(10)62920-7]
 - 26 **Gårdlund B**, Bitkover CY, Vaage J. Postoperative mediastinitis in cardiac surgery - microbiology and pathogenesis. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg* 2002; **21**: 825-830 [PMID: 12062270 DOI: 10.1016/S1010-7940(02)00084-2]
 - 27 **Comiskey DP**, Macdonald BJ, McCartney WT, Synnott K, O'Byrne J. The role of interfragmentary strain on the rate of bone healing-a new interpretation and mathematical model. *J Biomech* 2010; **43**: 2830-2834 [PMID: 20655536 DOI: 10.1016/j.jbiomech.2010.06.016]
 - 28 **Jagodzinski M**, Krettek C. Effect of mechanical stability on fracture healing--an update. *Injury* 2007; **38** Suppl 1: S3-10 [PMID: 17383483 DOI: 10.1016/j.injury.2007.02.005]
 - 29 **Srivella S**, Zikria EA, Ford WB, Samadani SR, Miller WH, Sullivan ME. Improved technique for closure of median sternotomy incision. Mersilene tapes versus standard wire closure. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 1987; **94**: 591-595 [PMID: 3309481]
 - 30 **Sommerhaug RG**, Reid DA, Wolfe SF, Lindsey DE. Sternal dehiscence: pericostal guy wires equals sternal stability. *Ann Thorac Surg* 1986; **42**: 107-108 [PMID: 3729606 DOI: 10.1016/S0003-4975(10)61857-7]
 - 31 **Soroff HS**, Hartman AR, Pak E, Sasvary DH, Pollak SB. Improved sternal closure using steel bands: early experience with three-year follow-up. *Ann Thorac Surg* 1996; **61**: 1172-1176 [PMID: 8607678 DOI: 10.1016/0003-4975(96)00025-2]
 - 32 **Kalush SL**, Bonchek LI. Peristernal closure of median sternotomy using stainless steel bands. *Ann Thorac Surg* 1976; **21**: 172-173 [PMID: 1267917 DOI: 10.1016/S0003-4975(10)64285-3]
 - 33 **Currey JD**, Brear K, Zioupos P, Reilly GC. Effect of formaldehyde fixation on some mechanical properties of bovine bone. *Biomaterials* 1995; **16**: 1267-1271 [PMID: 8589198 DOI: 10.1016/0142-9612(95)98135-2]
 - 34 **Di Marco RF**, Lee MW, Bekoe S, Grant KJ, Woelfel GF, Pellegrini RV. Interlocking figure-of-8 closure of the sternum. *Ann Thorac Surg* 1989; **47**: 927-929 [PMID: 2667479 DOI: 10.1016/0003-4975(89)90042-8]
 - 35 **Saito T**, Iguchi A, Sakurai M, Tabayashi K. Biomechanical study of a poly-L-lactide (PLLA) sternal pin in sternal closure after cardiothoracic surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2004; **77**: 684-687 [PMID: 14759459 DOI: 10.1016/S0003-4975(03)01341-9]
 - 36 **Joshi R**, Abraham S, Sampath Kumar A. Interlocking sternotomy: initial experience. *Asian Cardiovasc Thorac Ann* 2004; **12**: 16-18 [PMID: 14977735]
 - 37 **John S**, Weil L, Weil LS, Chase K. Scarf osteotomy for the correction of adolescent hallux valgus. *Foot Ankle Spec* 2010; **3**: 10-14 [PMID: 20400434 DOI: 10.1177/1938640009352806]
 - 38 **Coles CP**, Barei DP, Nork SE, Taitsman LA, Hanel DP, Bradford Henley M. The olecranon osteotomy: a six-year experience in the treatment of intraarticular fractures of the distal humerus. *J Orthop Trauma* 2006; **20**: 164-171 [PMID: 16648697]
 - 39 **Lee ME**, Blanche C. Curvilinear paramedian sternotomy. *Ann Thorac Surg* 1984; **38**: 414 [PMID: 6486957 DOI: 10.1016/S0003-4975(10)62299-0]

P- Reviewers Elias J, Kobayashi S, Laudner K, Lorbach O, Maruyama T, Mashreky SR **S- Editor** Gou SX
L- Editor A **E- Editor** Ma S



Relationship of knowledge about osteoporosis with education level and life habits

Mohammad Reza Etemadifar, Sayed-Mohammadamin Nourian, Mahboobe Fereidan-Esfahani, Hamidreza Shemshaki, Mohsen Nourbakhsh, Abolghasem Zarezadeh

Mohammad Reza Etemadifar, Department of Orthopedic Surgery, Isfahan University of Medical Sciences, Isfahan 81745, Iran
Sayed-Mohammadamin Nourian, Department of Biological Sciences, California State University, Stanislaus, Turlock, CA 95382, United States

Mahboobe Fereidan-Esfahani, Medical Student Research Committee, Isfahan University of Medical Sciences, Isfahan 81745, Iran

Hamidreza Shemshaki, Neuroscience Research Center, Kerman University of Medical Sciences, Kerman 81465-1798, Iran

Mohsen Nourbakhsh, Medical Students' Research Center, Isfahan University of Medical Sciences, Isfahan 81745, Iran

Abolghasem Zarezadeh, Department of Orthopedic Surgery, Isfahan University of Medical Sciences, Isfahan 81745, Iran

Author contributions: Shemshaki H and Etemadifar MR performed the majority of experiments; Nourbakhsh M, Shemshaki H and Nourian SM provided vital reagents and analytical tools and were also involved in editing the manuscript; Fereidan-Esfahani M and Zarezadeh A designed the study and wrote the manuscript.

Supported by The Isfahan University of Medical Sciences

Correspondence to: Dr. Hamidreza Shemshaki, Research Assistant, Neuroscience Research Center, Kerman University of Medical Sciences, Kerman 81745,

Iran. Hamidrezashemshaki@yahoo.com

Telephone: +98-912-2893979 Fax: +98-341-3224613

Received: October 15, 2012 Revised: March 27, 2013

Accepted: March 28, 2013

Published online: July 18, 2013

Abstract

AIM: To assess possible relationships of knowledge and related factors with educational level and osteoporosis-related life habits.

METHODS: This was a cross sectional study conducted on 268 women (≥ 35 years old) from June 2011 to August 2011. The sample collection was done in outpatient clinics in three university hospitals in Isfahan, Iran. We used a demographic questionnaire containing

questions that evaluated osteoporosis-related life habits, including exercise, smoking, intake of calcium and vitamin D supplements and so on. We also used the Osteoporosis Knowledge Assessment Tool to measure osteoporosis knowledge of women.

RESULTS: The mean level of knowledge about awareness of osteoporosis, its risk factors and preventive factors were 56, 55 and 22, respectively. The relationship of education level and awareness of osteoporosis, its risk factors and preventive factors was significant, with $R = 0.76$, $R = 0.73$ and $R = 0.83$, respectively ($P < 0.001$). The relationship of education level and osteoporosis-related life habits was not significant ($R = 0.03$ and $P = 0.56$). The relationship of osteoporosis-related life habits and awareness of osteoporosis and its risk factors was significant, with $R = 16\%$, $P = 0.006$ and $R = 16\%$, $P = 0.008$, respectively, but the relationship of osteoporosis-related life habits and preventive factors was not significant ($R = 0$, $P = 0.99$).

CONCLUSION: Iranian women with a higher education level have significantly better knowledge about osteoporosis than women with a lower educational level but they do not use this knowledge in their life.

© 2013 Baishideng. All rights reserved.

Key words: Osteoporosis; Knowledge; Education; Life habits; Relationship

Core tip: Osteoporosis, a serious health problem that diminishes quality of life, is a systemic skeletal disorder, characterized by reduction in bone mass, increasing bone fragility and fracture risk. Iranian women with a higher education level have significantly better knowledge about osteoporosis than women with a lower educational level but they do not use this knowledge in their life.

Etemadifar MR, Nourian SM, Fereidan-Esfahani M, Shemshaki H, Nourbakhsh M, Zarezadeh A. Relationship of knowledge about osteoporosis with education level and life habits. *World J Orthop* 2013; 4(3): 139-143 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-5836/full/v4/i3/139.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5312/wjo.v4.i3.139>

INTRODUCTION

Osteoporosis, a serious health problem that diminishes quality of life, is a systemic skeletal disorder, characterized by reduction in bone mass, increasing bone fragility and fracture risk^[1,2]. It has often been viewed as a disease affecting women^[3]. Approximately 40%-50% of women sustain osteoporotic fractures in their lifetime^[1,2]. The progress of decrease in bone mass is typically asymptomatic but in many women is manifested with clinical presentations, including acute back pain, fragility fractures (hip, vertebra, proximal femur and tibia), compression of mid-thoracic and upper lumbar vertebrae and progressive deformation of the spinal column that leads to limited back mobility and reduction in height^[4-7]. Based on bone mineral density (BMD) testing, the World Health Organization (WHO) clinically defines osteoporosis by a BMD T-score ≥ 2.5 SD below the mean bone mass density in healthy, young normal women^[8,9].

Many risk factors for osteoporosis have been identified: female sex, with a prevalence 4 times that of men; Asiatic and Caucasian races; old age, with a high percentage of osteoporosis among women over 70 years old; a family history of osteoporosis or fragility fractures; low body weight (less than 51.8 kg); premature menopause (menopause before 45 years of age); nulliparity; prolonged lactation; prolonged amenorrhea unrelated to menopause; inadequate consumption of a diet containing calcium and vitamin D; poor intestinal absorption of calcium; lactose intolerance; excessive caffeine and alcohol consumption; smoking; sedentary lifestyle; and prolonged treatment with thyroid hormones, glucocorticoids, anti-convulsants, aluminum antacids and anticoagulants^[1,10].

The most important preventive habits are weight-bearing exercises (*e.g.*, going up and down stairs, jogging, aerobics, swimming and isometrics, for at least 30 min daily), diet or supplements containing adequate levels of calcium and vitamin D, and absence or cessation of smoking and moderate or less alcohol and caffeine consumption^[7,11]. A study in the United States revealed that a high proportion of women were unaware of the association between cigarette smoking and osteoporosis^[12].

Physical activities continue to stimulate increases in bone diameter throughout the lifespan. These exercise-stimulated increases in bone diameter diminish the risk of fractures by mechanically counteracting the thinning of bones and increases in bone porosity. Exercise should be dynamic, exceed a threshold intensity and strain frequency, be relatively brief but intermittent, and also be supported by unlimited nutrient energy and adequate cal-

cium and vitamin D3 supplements^[13].

A study of American women (≥ 25 years) showed that knowledge about osteoporosis was limited^[14]. Although calcium intake was sufficient in most cases, the amount and type of physical activity was not enough for their age. Other studies of Caucasian and African-American women found that most had heard about osteoporosis but few women had adequate exercise or the recommended intake of calcium per day^[15,16]. Another study in Australia showed that Asian women living in Australia also had a low calcium intake (< 800 mg/d) and their knowledge about osteoporosis was limited^[17]. A study in Mexico of women aged 50-59 years showed that about 90% of subjects had knowledge about the relationship of menopause and osteoporosis but most subjects were not aware of other risk factors and incorporated life habits that increase the risk of osteoporosis^[18]. Two studies of women of Hispanic origin in the United States have shown different results. One study found that more than 37% of women had habits preventing osteoporosis, including taking calcium supplements and getting enough physical exercise. It was mostly attributed to prior health education, knowledge about osteoporosis and bone-mass evaluations offered by healthcare services^[19]. The other study of both Hispanic and African-American women found that most women in both groups had little knowledge of behaviors that increase and maintain bone mass, less than 50% of women had regular physical exercise, and less than 10% had adequate calcium intake^[20]. Bisphosphonates are antiresorptive drugs widely used to treat osteoporosis. Denosumab 60 mg subcutaneously every 6 mo is an approved treatment for women with postmenopausal osteoporosis (PMO) who are at high risk for fracture^[21,22].

In this study, we aimed to assess the possible relationships of the level of knowledge and related factors with educational level and osteoporosis-related life habits (including exercise, calcium and vitamin D intake) among Iranian women aged ≥ 35 years.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Ethics

This work was carried out in accordance with the Declaration of Helsinki (2000) of the World Medical Association and was approved ethically by Al-Zahra University Hospital Trust (988/1.786). All patients provided informed written consent.

Patients and settings

This was a cross sectional study conducted on 268 women (≥ 35 years old) from June 2011 to August 2011. The sample collection was done in outpatient clinics (except orthopedic and rheumatology) in three university hospitals in Isfahan, Iran.

We used a demographic questionnaire containing questions that evaluated osteoporosis-related life habits (including exercise, smoking, daily consumption of milk,

Table 1 Relationship of level of knowledge about osteoporosis with education level and related life habits with a Persian version of the osteoporosis knowledge assessment tool

	Awareness of osteoporosis	Risk factors	Preventive factors	Osteoporosis-related life habits
Education level	R = 0.76/ P < 0.001	R = 0.73/ P < 0.001	R = 0.83/ P < 0.001	R = 0.03/ P = 0.56
Osteoporosis-related life habits	R = 16/ P = 0.006	R = 16/ P = 0.008	R = 0/ P = 0.99	

intake of calcium and vitamin D supplements, usage of certain drugs such as contraceptives and exposure to sunlight) and the Osteoporosis Knowledge Assessment Tool (OKAT), an instrument to measure knowledge about osteoporosis of women^[23]. The Persian version of the OKAT was tested in a pilot study and 10 adult women filled out a scale for “cognitive debriefing” which was evaluated by four orthopedic surgeons for a “clinician’s review”^[24].

Statistical analysis

We used Cronbach’s alpha to evaluate the internal consistency of OKAT, which was 77%. To evaluate education level, Spearman’s correlation was used. Pearson’s correlation was applied to determine the relationship of the level of knowledge and osteoporosis-related life habits. $P < 0.05$ was considered as significant. SPSS for Windows, Version 16.0, was used for statistical analyses.

RESULTS

The study involved 268 adult women older than 35 years. Ninety seven percent were married and 94.8% of them did not have other diseases (4% had thyroid disease, 2.6% had diabetes and 2.2% had other diseases). Regarding the education level, 68.6%, 16.4% and 15% of participants had the education level below high school diploma, high school diploma, and academic education, respectively. Nonsmokers comprised 97.4% of the sample. Ninety five point nine percent of women did not exercise regularly. Among the women in the study, 41% had at least 30 min exposure to sunlight every day. Ninety seven point six percent and 98.2% of participants had no intake of calcium and vitamin D supplements, respectively. Only 19.8% regularly consumed daily milk. Forty percent of women were post-menopausal, of whom just 1.3% have received replacement hormone therapy. Ninety eight point five percent of women in our study did not undergo any assessments to evaluate osteoporosis. Sources of their information were television (40%), radio (27%), books (14%), newspapers (11%) and other people (8%).

The mean level of knowledge about osteoporosis, its risk factors and preventive factors were 56, 55 and 22, respectively. Thus, mean level of knowledge about osteoporosis was 44.3 in total. Means were calculated between

“0 to 100”. The relationship of education level and awareness of osteoporosis, its risk factors and preventive factors was significant with $R = 0.76$, $R = 0.73$ and $R = 0.83$, respectively ($P < 0.001$). The relationship of education level and osteoporosis-related life habits was not significant ($R = 0.03$ and $P = 0.56$). The relationship of osteoporosis-related life habits and awareness of osteoporosis and its risk factors was significant with $R = 16$, $P = 0.006$ and $R = 16$, $P = 0.008$, respectively, but the relationship of osteoporosis-related life habits and preventive factors was not significant ($R = 0$, $P = 0.99$) (Table 1).

DISCUSSION

Women’s knowledge about osteoporosis was poor or limited among our subjects; therefore, health educational programs and health services regarding osteoporosis are necessary. This finding is consistent with previous studies in Taiwan, Brazil, Australia and the United States^[14,23,25,26]. In contrast, a study in Sweden showed that performing a general intervention program concerning the knowledge of osteoporosis in participants is not effective^[27].

We found that there was a significant relationship of level of knowledge and education but the relationship of education level and osteoporosis-related life habits was not significant. The relationship of osteoporosis-related life habits and awareness of osteoporosis and its risk factors was significant but there was no significant relationship of osteoporosis-related life habits and preventive factors. The present results show that Iranian women with a higher education level have significantly better knowledge about osteoporosis than women with a lower educational level, similar to Chinese women in Singapore and Salvadoran women in Brazil^[26,28], but they do not use this knowledge in their life. For instance, among women of our study which included participants with a high education level, 95.9% did not exercise regularly, 97.6% and 98.2% did not have an adequate intake of calcium and vitamin D supplements and only 19.8% had regular daily milk. So, similar to studies in Australia and Brazil, intake of calcium in our study was low^[17,26]. This was in contrast to the study of Terrio *et al.*^[14] in the United States in which the intake of calcium was sufficient in most cases.

It indicates the importance of skin sun exposure in order to raise serum vitamin D levels. We can conclude that Iranian women’s knowledge about osteoporosis does not lead to improving the preventive habits of osteoporosis and, with regards to the absence of a significant relationship between education level and osteoporosis-related life habits, in addition to increasing women’s knowledge, we must change osteoporosis-related life habits, together with women’s diet and behavior patterns. Therefore, we should provide better programs for the evaluation of osteoporosis, establish continuous teaching programs, and prepare more appropriate educational materials for osteoporosis and improve specific health messages in public media.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We are thankful to Dr. Ali Gholamrezaei for editing this report. Also, we are thankful to orthopedic department staff of the Al-Zahra, Kashani and Noor Hospitals for helping us in conducting this study.

COMMENTS

Background

Osteoporosis, a serious health problem that diminishes quality of life, is a systemic skeletal disorder, characterized by reduction in bone mass, increasing bone fragility and fracture risk.

Research frontiers

Osteoporosis, a serious health problem that diminishes quality of life, is a systemic skeletal disorder, characterized by reduction in bone mass, increasing bone fragility and fracture risk. In this study, the authors assessed possible relationships of the level of knowledge and related factors with educational level and osteoporosis-related life habits (including exercise, calcium and vitamin D intake) among Iranian women aged ≥ 35 years.

Innovations and breakthroughs

Iranian women's knowledge about osteoporosis does not lead to improving the preventive habits of osteoporosis and, with regards to the absence of a significant relationship between education level and osteoporosis-related life habits, in addition to increasing women's knowledge, osteoporosis-related life habits, together with women's diet and behavior patterns must change. Therefore, better programs for the evaluation of osteoporosis should be provided, continuous teaching programs established, and more appropriate educational materials for osteoporosis and improved specific health messages in public media should be prepared.

Applications

By understanding how knowledge about osteoporosis leads to improving the preventive habits of osteoporosis, this study may represent a future strategy for improving women's knowledge about osteoporosis.

Peer review

The authors examined women's knowledge about osteoporosis and demonstrated that it does not lead to improving the preventive habits of osteoporosis and, with regards to the absence of a significant relationship between education level and osteoporosis-related life habits, in addition to increasing women's knowledge, the authors must change osteoporosis-related life habits, together with women's diet and behavior patterns. Therefore, the authors should provide better programs for the evaluation of osteoporosis, establish continuous teaching programs, and prepare more appropriate educational materials for osteoporosis and improve specific health messages in public media.

REFERENCES

- Lindsay R, Cosman F, Braunwald E, Facui A, Kasperet D. Osteoporosis, Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine. Philadelphia: Mc Graw-Hill, 2001: 2226-2237
- Kallerhoff M, Müller-Siegel K, Verwiebe R, Weber MH, Wassmann K, Blech M, Scheler F, Ringert RH. [Localization and extent of tissue damage caused by extracorporeal lithotripsy (ESWL)]. *Urologe A* 1991; **30**: 85-88 [PMID: 1711730 DOI: 10.1590/S0004-27302006000400021]
- Shawa H, Favela E, Diaz J. Knowledge of osteoporosis among men in the primary care setting. *South Med J* 2011; **104**: 584-588 [PMID: 21886068 DOI: 10.1097/SMJ.0b013e3182241da1]
- Schuit SC, van der Klift M, Weel AE, de Laet CE, Burger H, Seeman E, Hofman A, Uitterlinden AG, van Leeuwen JP, Pols HA. Fracture incidence and association with bone mineral density in elderly men and women: the Rotterdam Study. *Bone* 2004; **34**: 195-202 [PMID: 14751578 DOI: 10.1016/j.bone.2003.10.001]
- Sornay-Rendu E, Munoz F, Garnero P, Duboeuf F, Delmas PD. Identification of osteopenic women at high risk of fracture: the OFELY study. *J Bone Miner Res* 2005; **20**: 1813-1819 [PMID: 16160738 DOI: 10.1359/JBMR.050609]
- Assessment of fracture risk and its application to screening for postmenopausal osteoporosis. Report of a WHO Study Group. *World Health Organ Tech Rep Ser* 1994; **843**: 1-129 [PMID: 7941614]
- Prevention and management of osteoporosis. *World Health Organ Tech Rep Ser* 2003; **921**: 1-164, back cover [PMID: 15293701]
- Kanis JA. Assessment of fracture risk and its application to screening for postmenopausal osteoporosis: synopsis of a WHO report. WHO Study Group. *Osteoporos Int* 1994; **4**: 368-381 [PMID: 7696835]
- Guidelines for evaluation of drugs for use in man. Report of a WHO scientific group. *World Health Organ Tech Rep Ser* 1975; **(563)**: 1-59 [PMID: 803745]
- Curry LC, Hogstel MO. Risk status related to knowledge of osteoporosis in older women. *J Women Aging* 2001; **13**: 71-83 [PMID: 11569595 DOI: 10.1300/J074v13n02_06]
- Suleiman S, Nelson M, Li F, Buxton-Thomas M, Moniz C. Effect of calcium intake and physical activity level on bone mass and turnover in healthy, white, postmenopausal women. *Am J Clin Nutr* 1997; **66**: 937-943 [PMID: 9322571]
- Roth LK, Taylor HS. Risks of smoking to reproductive health: assessment of women's knowledge. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2001; **184**: 934-939 [PMID: 11303201 DOI: 10.1067/mob.2001.112103]
- Borer KT. Physical activity in the prevention and amelioration of osteoporosis in women: interaction of mechanical, hormonal and dietary factors. *Sports Med* 2005; **35**: 779-830 [PMID: 16138787 DOI: 10.2165/00007256-200535090-00004]
- Terrio K, Auld GW. Osteoporosis knowledge, calcium intake, and weight-bearing physical activity in three age groups of women. *J Community Health* 2002; **27**: 307-320 [PMID: 12238730]
- Kasper MJ, Peterson MG, Allegrante JP. The need for comprehensive educational osteoporosis prevention programs for young women: results from a second osteoporosis prevention survey. *Arthritis Rheum* 2001; **45**: 28-34 [PMID: 11308058]
- Kasper MJ, Peterson MG, Allegrante JP, Galsworthy TD, Gutin B. Knowledge, beliefs, and behaviors among college women concerning the prevention of osteoporosis. *Arch Fam Med* 1994; **3**: 696-702 [PMID: 7952256 DOI: 10.1001/archfam.3.8.696]
- Liew YL, Mann D, Piterman L. Osteoporosis risks. A comparative study of Asian Australian and Caucasian Australian women. *Aust Fam Physician* 2002; **31**: 291-293, 297 [PMID: 11926162]
- Velasco-Murillo V, Navarrete-Hernández E, Ojeda-Mijares RI, Pozos-Cavanzo JL, Camacho-Rodríguez MA, Cardona-Pérez JA. Experience and knowledge about climacteric and menopause in women in Mexico City. *Gac Med Mex* 2000; **136**: 555-564 [PMID: 11131857]
- Orces CH, Casas C, Lee S, Garci-Cavazos R, White W. Determinants of osteoporosis prevention in low-income Mexican-American women. *South Med J* 2003; **96**: 458-464 [PMID: 12911184 DOI: 10.1097/01.SMJ.0000051905.38128.B4]
- Geller SE, Derman R. Knowledge, beliefs, and risk factors for osteoporosis among African-American and Hispanic women. *J Natl Med Assoc* 2001; **93**: 13-21 [PMID: 12653376]
- Syversen U, Halse JI. Bisphosphonate treatment of osteoporosis and other skeletal diseases. *Tidsskr Nor Laegeforen* 2011; **131**: 244-247 [PMID: 21304573 DOI: 10.4045/tidsskr.09.0470]
- Lewiecki EM. Safety and tolerability of denosumab for the treatment of postmenopausal osteoporosis. *Drug Healthc Patient Saf* 2011; **3**: 79-91 [PMID: 22279412 DOI: 10.2147/DHPS.S7727]
- Winzenberg TM, Oldenburg B, Frendin S, Jones G. The design of a valid and reliable questionnaire to measure osteoporosis knowledge in women: the Osteoporosis Knowledge

- Assessment Tool (OKAT). *BMC Musculoskelet Disord* 2003; **4**: 17 [PMID: 12877751 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2474-4-17]
- 24 **Acquadro C**, Conway K, Giroulet C, Mear I. Linguistic validation manual for patient-reported outcomes (PRO) instruments. Lyon: Mapi Research Institute, 2004
- 25 **Yu S**, Huang YC. Knowledge of, attitudes toward, and activity to prevent osteoporosis among middle-aged and elderly women. *J Nurs Res* 2003; **11**: 65-72 [PMID: 12695981 DOI: 10.1097/01.JNR.0000347620.75155.4b]
- 26 **Hernandez-Rauda R**, Martinez-Garcia S. Osteoporosis-related life habits and knowledge about osteoporosis among women in El Salvador: a cross-sectional study. *BMC Musculoskelet Disord* 2004; **5**: 29 [PMID: 15329150 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2474-5-29]
- 27 **Waller J**, Eriksson O, Foldevi M, Kronhed AC, Larsson L, Löfman O, Toss G, Möller M. Knowledge of osteoporosis in a Swedish municipality--a prospective study. *Prev Med* 2002; **34**: 485-491 [PMID: 11914055 DOI: 10.1006/pmed.2002.1007]
- 28 **Saw SM**, Hong CY, Lee J, Wong ML, Chan MF, Cheng A, Leong KH. Awareness and health beliefs of women towards osteoporosis. *Osteoporos Int* 2003; **14**: 595-601 [PMID: 12830368 DOI: 10.1007/s00198-003-1403-6]

P- Reviewer Kutscha-Lissberg F **S- Editor** Huang XZ
L- Editor Roemmele A **E- Editor** Zhang DN



Ponseti method compared with soft-tissue release for the management of clubfoot: A meta-analysis study

Marios G Lykissas, Alvin H Crawford, Emily A Eismann, Junichi Tamai

Marios G Lykissas, Alvin H Crawford, Emily A Eismann, Junichi Tamai, Division of Pediatric Orthopaedic Surgery, Cincinnati Children's Hospital Medical Center, Cincinnati, OH 45229, United States

Author contributions: All authors contributed equally to this paper.

Correspondence to: Marios G Lykissas, MD, PhD, Division of Pediatric Orthopaedic Surgery, Cincinnati Children's Hospital Medical Center, 3333 Burnet Avenue, MLC 217, Cincinnati, OH 45229, United States. mariolyk@yahoo.com

Telephone: +1-513-6527207 Fax: +1-513-6527207

Received: January 9, 2013 Revised: March 27, 2013

Accepted: April 27, 2013

Published online: July 18, 2013

Abstract

AIM: To compare the functional outcomes of patients who underwent open surgery vs Ponseti method for the management of idiopathic clubfoot and to determine whether correlations exist between functional outcome and radiographic measurements.

METHODS: A meta-analysis of the literature was conducted for studies concerning primary treatment of patients with idiopathic clubfoot. We searched PubMed Medline, EMBASE, and the Cochrane Library databases from January 1950 to October 2011. Meta-analyses were performed on outcomes from 12 studies. Pooled means, SDs, and sample sizes were either identified in the results or calculated based on the results of each study.

RESULTS: Overall, 835 treated idiopathic clubfeet in 516 patients were reviewed. The average follow-up was 15.7 years. Patients managed with Ponseti method did have a higher rate of excellent or good outcome than patients treated with open surgery (0.76 and 0.62, respectively), but not quite to the point of statistical significance ($Q = 3.73, P = 0.053$). Age at surgery was

not correlated with the functional outcome for the surgically treated patients ($r = -0.32, P = 0.68$). A larger anteroposterior talocalcaneal angle was correlated with a higher rate of excellent or good outcomes ($r = 0.80, P = 0.006$). There were no other significant correlations between the functional and radiographic outcomes.

CONCLUSION: The Ponseti method should be considered the initial treatment of idiopathic clubfeet, and open surgery should be reserved for clubfeet that cannot be completely corrected.

© 2013 Baishideng. All rights reserved.

Key words: Idiopathic clubfoot; Congenital talipes equinovarus; Ponseti method; Surgical release; Ponseti-Laaveg score

Core tip: This study analyzed a large cohort of patients with idiopathic clubfoot and presented differences in the functional and radiographic outcomes based on the management employed. Although no statistically significant difference was noted in the overall functional outcomes between patients managed with the Ponseti method or open surgery, patients treated with the Ponseti method had a higher rate of excellent or good outcomes. Serial manipulation and casting has been widely accepted as the initial treatment of idiopathic clubfeet, and soft-tissue release is reserved for clubfeet that cannot be completely corrected. A strict brace compliance remains the major challenge of the Ponseti method.

Lykissas MG, Crawford AH, Eismann EA, Tamai J. Ponseti method compared with soft-tissue release for the management of clubfoot: A meta-analysis study. *World J Orthop* 2013; 4(3): 144-153 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-5836/full/v4/i3/144.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5312/wjo.v4.i3.144>

INTRODUCTION

During the second half of the twentieth century, the primary treatment of idiopathic clubfoot has ranged from gentle manipulations to aggressive surgical treatment. Surgical management predominated because it was considered as a method that could obtain full and lasting correction. Over time and based on long-term follow-up studies surgeons realized that the results of surgical intervention are unpredictable^[1-3]. Extensive soft-tissue releases can result in scarring which may lead to stiffness, recurrent deformity, and pain^[4]. It was this observation along with the promising results of the Ponseti method^[5,6] that shifted treatment of idiopathic clubfoot towards a more conservative approach consisting of manipulations and serial casting, and frequently minimal invasive surgery. Open surgery is usually reserved for more severe cases that failed serial casting. However, even in these cases, current surgical procedures are less aggressive than procedures performed three decades ago.

Although there are a plethora of studies that have assessed the functional and radiographic outcomes following different treatment protocols, there are only a few studies that directly compare open surgery and Ponseti method for the management of idiopathic clubfoot^[1,7-9]. This can be mainly attributed to variable and simplistic grading systems for scoring the severity of the deformity as well as the differing evaluation systems for assessing outcomes. Only one study in the current literature prospectively compares surgical management and Ponseti method, but there are no prospective randomized controlled trials^[7].

The present meta-analysis aims to address two topics. The main purpose is to compare the functional outcomes between patients undergoing open surgery *vs* Ponseti method for the treatment of idiopathic clubfoot. A secondary aim is to determine if functional outcomes and radiographic measurements correlate.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Literature search

A meta-analysis of the literature was conducted for studies concerning management of patients with idiopathic clubfoot with either soft-tissue release or Ponseti method. The search was performed with use of the following electronic bibliographic databases: Medical Literature Analysis and Retrieval System online (PubMed Medline), Excerpta Medica Database (EMBASE), and The Cochrane Library. The medical subject headings or text words utilized included: “clubfoot”, “congenital talipes equinovarus”, “soft-tissue release”, “surgery”, and “Ponseti method”. The bibliographies of the retrieved articles as well as the “related articles” option in PubMed Medline were also searched to assess for potentially inclusive papers that were missed by the initial search.

Criteria for eligibility

Since several methods and systems have been used to

describe the functional and radiographic outcome of patients treated with open surgery or Ponseti method, we performed an initial search to identify the most commonly used functional scores and radiographic parameters. These included: Laaveg-Ponseti score (Figure 1)^[5], anteroposterior talocalcaneal angle (TCA-AP), lateral talocalcaneal angle (TCA-LT), anteroposterior talus-first metatarsal angle (TMT-AP), lateral talus-first metatarsal angle (TMT-LT), anteroposterior calcaneus-fifth metatarsal angle (CMT-AP), lateral first-fifth metatarsal angle (MIT-LT), and talocalcaneal index (TCI) (Figure 2). The Laaveg-Ponseti score is a 100-point evaluation system with scores between 90 and 100 considered as excellent, 80 and 89 as good, 70 and 79 as moderate, and below 70 as poor. According to our initial search of the literature, this was the most commonly used functional score in patients who underwent soft-tissue release or Ponseti method from its description in 1980 until today. In contrast to other systems, it can be used to study the correlation between the functional outcome and radiographic measurements since it relies only on clinical aspects, not including any radiographic parameters^[10].

Based on the initial search findings, studies selected for the analyses were original studies fulfilling the following eligibility criteria: (1) assess idiopathic clubfoot; (2) assess primary treatment of idiopathic clubfoot; (3) use the functional evaluation score of Laaveg-Ponseti; (4) use of at least three of the radiographic outcome measures found to be the most commonly used in the literature and described above; (5) evaluate more than ten feet; (6) evaluate human subjects; and (7) was published from January 1950 through October 2011.

Potentially inclusive papers were manually reviewed and were discussed among the authors, and a decision was made regarding inclusion. If there was any disagreement among authors regarding the inclusion of an article, the senior author made the final decision.

Extraction of data

Data were carefully extracted and computerized on the following variables from those published articles that meet our inclusion criteria: (1) radiographic findings at final follow-up (main outcome variable); (2) Laaveg-Ponseti score at final follow-up (main outcome variable); (3) time period during which the procedure was performed; (4) duration of follow-up; (5) number of patients/feet; (6) unilateral or bilateral involvement; (7) sex of the patient; (8) age at treatment; (9) level of evidence; (10) publication year; and (11) authors' names.

Statistical analysis

Due to the possibility of variation between studies, the more conservative, random-effects model was selected over a fixed-effects model. Random effects models account for both within-study and between-study variation and are more preferable when assessing observational studies. Pooled means, SDs, and sample sizes were either identified in the results of each study or calculated based

Category	Points
Satisfaction (20 points)	
I am	
(1) very satisfied with the end result	20
(2) satisfied with the end result	16
(3) neither satisfied nor unsatisfied with the end result	12
(4) unsatisfied with the end result	8
(5) very unsatisfied with the end result	4
Function (20 points)	
In my daily living, my club foot	
(1) does not limit my activities	20
(2) occasionally limits my strenuous activities	16
(3) neither satisfied nor unsatisfied with the end result	12
(4) usually limits my strenuous activities	8
(5) limits me in walking	4
Pain (30 points)	
My club foot	
(1) is never painful	30
(2) occasionally causes mild pain during strenuous activities	24
(3) usually is painful after strenuous activities only	18
(4) is occasionally painful during routine activities	12
(5) is painful during walking	6
Position of heel when standing (10 points)	
My club foot	
Heel varus, 0° or some heel valgus	10
Heel varus, 1°-5°	5
Heel varus, 6°-10°	3
Heel varus, greater than 10°	0
Passive motion (10 points)	
Dorsiflexion	1 point per 5°
Total varus-valgus motion of heel	1 point per 10°
Total anterior inversion-eversion of foot	1 point per 25°
Gait (10 points)	
Normal	6
Can toe-walk	2
Can heel-walk	2
Limp	-2
No heel-strike	-2
Abnormal toe-off	-2

Figure 1 Functional rating system for clubfoot. Reproduced from by Laaveg *et al*^[6].



Figure 2 Radiographic parameters most commonly measured on plain films. Anteroposterior (A) and lateral (B) standing foot radiographs of a patient with club-foot showing the anteroposterior talocalcaneal angle (a), anteroposterior calcaneus-fifth metatarsal angle (b), anteroposterior talus-first metatarsal angle (c), lateral talocalcaneal angle (d), lateral talus-first metatarsal angle (e), and lateral first-fifth metatarsal angle (f).

on the results. Effect sizes with 95%CI were calculated using the mean and SE for each study. Subgroup analyses were performed in order to compare the Ponseti method and surgical treatment studies on all outcome measures. Variability between treatment types was assessed with Cochran's *Q* statistic, which measures the

presence or absence of heterogeneity between studies based on a χ^2 distribution. It is calculated as the weighted sum of squared differences between individual study effects and pooled effects across studies. The *I*² index was also calculated as a measure of the extent of heterogeneity between studies. Larger *Q* and *I*² values indicate

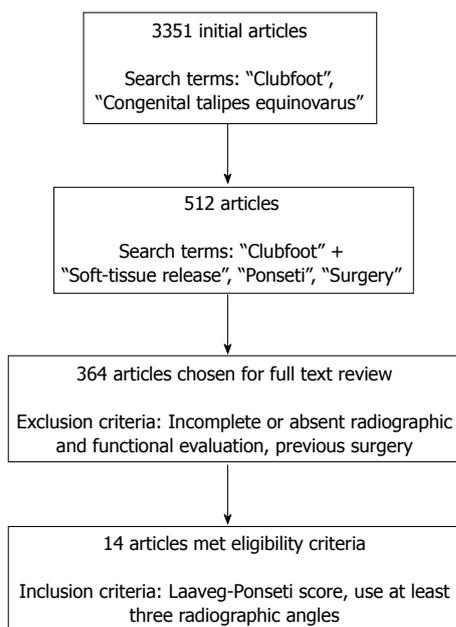


Figure 3 Flow chart summary of the literature.

greater variability. The number of feet with good or excellent outcomes on the Laaveg-Ponseti scale was also compared to the number of feet with poor or fair outcomes using event rates of successful outcomes rather than effect sizes.

Meta-analyses were performed using the Comprehensive Meta-Analysis software (2.0, Bio-Stat, Englewood, NJ, United States). A P value of 0.05 or less was considered as statistical significant.

RESULTS

Literature search

Based on the title and the abstract, the initial electronic search yielded 512 articles as potentially eligible. After obtaining the full text of 364 articles, a total of fourteen articles were found to fulfill the inclusion criteria^[1,3,5,6,9-18]. Two studies were excluded because the measures were in terms of medians and ranges, and thus, effect sizes could not be calculated^[9,18]. A flow chart summary of the literature search is shown in Figure 3.

Meta-analyses were performed on outcomes from 12 studies^[1,3,5,6,10-17]. Nine studies evaluated functional and radiographic outcome following soft-tissue release, two studies after Ponseti method, and one study compared outcomes in patients who underwent Ponseti method or open surgery for the management of idiopathic clubfoot. Three studies were therapeutic level of evidence III studies^[1,3,13]. The rest of the studies were observational level of evidence IV case series^[5,6,10-12,14-17].

In summary, 835 treated idiopathic clubfeet in 516 patients were reviewed. Among these patients, 369 patients (611 feet) were treated with soft-tissue release and 147 patients (224 feet) were managed with the Ponseti method. The male-to-female ratio was 2.5:1. The unilateral-to-bilateral involvement ratio was 1.25:1. The mean age

at initiation of treatment was 8.8 ± 4.8 mo. The average follow-up was 15.7 ± 10.8 years. The minimum follow-up was one year and the maximum 42 years.

Functional outcome

At the final follow-up, functional outcomes, as measured with the Laaveg-Ponseti score, did not differ between patients treated with Ponseti method and patients treated with soft-tissue release (86.3 and 82.0, respectively, $Q = 0.45$, $P = 0.50$) (Table 1). However, when compared categorically, patients managed with Ponseti method did have a higher rate of excellent or good outcome than patients treated with open surgery (0.76 and 0.62, respectively), but not quite to the point of statistical significance ($Q = 3.73$, $P = 0.053$) (Figure 4, Table 1).

For all patients studied, a longer length of follow-up was correlated with worse functional outcomes ($r = -0.82$, $P = 0.023$). Age at surgery was not correlated with functional outcome for patients treated with open surgery ($r = -0.32$, $P = 0.68$).

Radiographic outcome

The radiographs taken at the time of the final follow-up did not show any significant differences between patients treated with manipulation and serial casting (Ponseti method) and patients treated with soft-tissue release regarding the TCA-AP (15.8° and 18.9° , respectively) ($Q = 2.09$, $P = 0.15$), TCA-LT (29.9° and 26.6° , respectively) ($Q = 0.33$, $P = 0.57$), TCI (45.7° and 46.1° , respectively) ($Q = 0.002$, $P = 0.96$), and the TMT-AP angles (0.96° and 6.04° , respectively) ($Q = 0.55$, $P = 0.11$) (Table 2).

Statistically significant differences were noted between patients managed with the Ponseti method and patients treated with open surgery in TMT-LT (5.51° and 12.08° , respectively) ($Q = 10.74$, $P = 0.001$), MTT-LT (15.4° and 25.2° , respectively) ($Q = 10.48$, $P = 0.001$), and CMT-AP angles (-6.49° and 3.86° , respectively) ($Q = 16.12$, $P < 0.001$) (Table 3).

Heterogeneity in outcomes

For the Laaveg-Ponseti score and all radiographic measurements, except TCA-LT, greater variability was recorded in patients who underwent open surgery compared with patients managed with the Ponseti method, as indicated by the higher Q values and I^2 values (Table 4).

Correlations between functional outcome and radiographic measurements

A larger TCA-AP angle was correlated with a higher rate of excellent or good outcomes ($r = 0.80$, $P = 0.006$). Functional outcomes were not significantly correlated with MTT-LT ($r = -0.80$, $P = 0.20$), TMT-AP ($r = -0.80$, $P = 0.20$), and TCA-AP ($r = 0.70$, $P = 0.19$) angles or the TCI ($r = -0.30$, $P = 0.62$) (Table 5).

DISCUSSION

Idiopathic clubfoot is a complex three dimensional deformity with an incidence of between 0.64 and 6.8 per

Table 1 Comparison of Laaveg-Ponseti score between patients treated with the Ponseti method and surgically managed patients

Studies	Level of evidence	Mean follow-up (yr)	Time period of procedure	Patients (n)	Feet (n)	Laaveg-Ponseti score mean (95%CI)	Excellent/good Laaveg-Ponseti rating rate (95%CI)
All Treatments				500	810	86.2 (84.2-88.2)	0.73 (0.67-0.78)
Ponseti method				147	224	86.3 (84.2-88.3)	0.76 (0.69-0.81)
Ippolito <i>et al</i> ^[11]	III	19	1979-1984	32	49	85.4 (83.9-86.9)	0.78 (0.64-0.87)
Laaveg <i>et al</i> ^[5]	III	18.8	1950-1967	70	104	87.5 (85.3-89.7)	0.74 (0.65-0.82)
Cooper <i>et al</i> ^[6]	IV	34	1950-1967	45	71	-	0.78 (0.63-0.88)
Soft-tissue release				353	586	82.0 (69.5-94.5)	0.62 (0.48-0.74)
Ippolito <i>et al</i> ^[11]	III	25	1973-1977	32	47	74.7 (71.4-78.0)	0.43 (0.29-0.57)
Dobbs <i>et al</i> ^[3]	III	31	1972-1979	45	73	65.3 (62.9-67.7)	0.33 (0.23-0.44)
Fridman <i>et al</i> ^[10]	IV	6.4	1986-2003	50	71	86.9 (84.1-89.6)	0.80 (0.69-0.88)
Schuh e <i>et al</i> ^[11]	IV	4.5	1986-2000	86	130	95.6 (94.0-97.2)	-
Singh <i>et al</i> ^[12]	IV	13.8	1980-1996	18	33	-	0.82 (0.65-0.92)
Prasad <i>et al</i> ^[13]	IV	-	-	30	50	-	0.58 (0.44-0.71)
Munshi <i>et al</i> ^[14]	III	3.5	-	-	50	87.3 (83.1-91.5)	0.78 (0.65-0.87)
Herbsthofer <i>et al</i> ^[15]	IV	6.7	1984-1994	38	62	-	0.47 (0.35-0.59)
Abulsaad <i>et al</i> ^[16]	IV	3.9	2000-2004	54	70	-	0.69 (0.57-0.78)
Difference between treatments						Q = 0.45, P = 0.50	Q = 3.73, P = 0.053

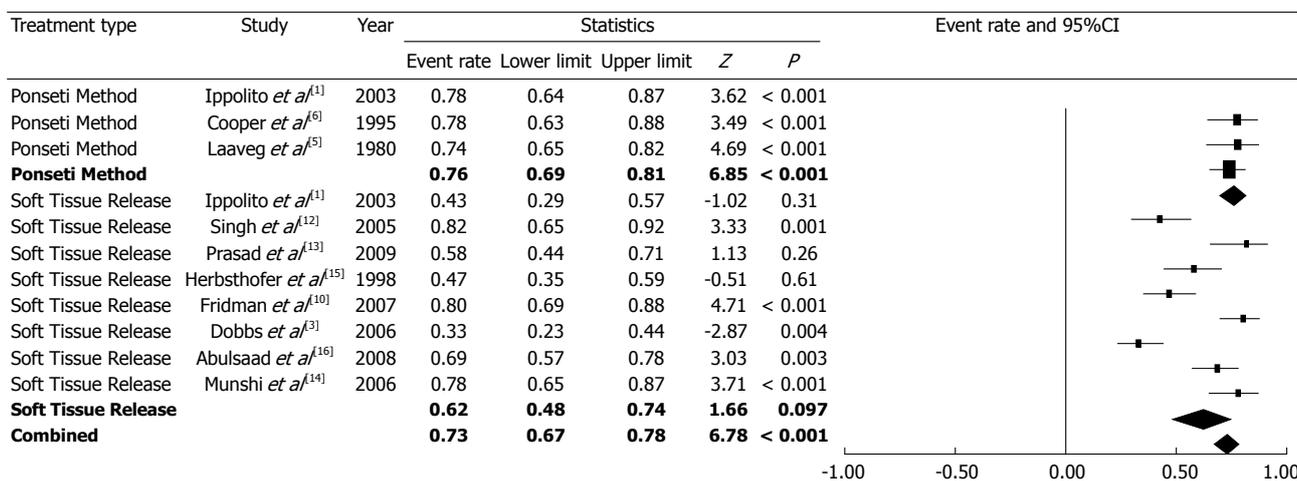


Figure 4 Success rate of Ponseti method vs soft-tissue release for clubfoot management based on Laaveg-Ponseti score.

1000 live births^[19]. Pathogenesis of idiopathic clubfoot remains obscure, but there is increased evidence for a multifactorial etiologic model. Both genetic and environmental factors have been implicated. Muscle growth impairment^[20,21], primary germ plasm defect in the talus^[22], vascular anomalies^[23-25], medial retraction fibrosis^[26], and intrauterine factors^[19], such as oligohydramnios, placental insufficiency, drugs, infective pathogens, and amniocentesis prior to the eleventh week^[27], have been proposed as potential etiologic factors in the pathogenesis of idiopathic clubfoot. Studies have shown that the deformity has a heritable factor, but is not inherited in a simple autosomal dominant or recessive mendelian fashion^[28-32]. Although there is no evidence to support sex linkage, males are affected more commonly than females in all ethnic groups. The reported male-to-female ratio is 2.5:1^[33]. This is in accordance to our findings. The male-to-female ratio in 516 patients with idiopathic clubfoot reviewed in our study was 2.5:1. We also recorded a unilateral-to-bilateral involvement ratio of 1.25:1.

The success rates in different series are difficult to compare because of variation in severity of the deformity between study groups and, more importantly, absence of common assessment protocols. In the present meta-analysis, in an effort to use a “common language” between patients treated with open surgery or Ponseti method, we used the subjective assessment method published by Laaveg *et al*^[5]. It is based on functionality, presence of pain, foot and ankle range of motion, and patient’s satisfaction. In contrast to other systems, it can be used to study the correlation between the functional outcome and radiographic measurements since it relies only on clinical aspects, not including any radiographic parameters^[15]. Although it may have been interesting to compare outcomes based on the degree of deformity prior to treatment, only five of the 12 studies included in this meta-analysis evaluated clubfeet at birth. Even in these few studies, the system used deferred, and a comparison in terms of severity of the deformity was not possible. It should also be noted that this study has the disadvantages

Table 2 Comparison of anteroposterior talocalcaneal angle, lateral talocalcaneal angle, and talocalcaneal index between patients treated with the Ponseti method and surgically managed patients

Studies	Patients	Feet	Talocalcaneal		
			AP mean (95%CI)	Lateral mean (95%CI)	Index mean (95%CI)
All treatments	430	655	16.2 (14.9-17.5)	26.9 (23.9-29.9)	46.0 (41.4-50.7)
Ponseti method	147	224	15.8 (14.5-17.2)	29.9 (19.3-40.5)	45.7 (33.4-58.0)
Ippolito <i>et al</i> ^[11]	32	49	16.1 (14.6-17.6)	38.8 (37.1-40.4)	54.9 (51.7-58.0)
Laaveg <i>et al</i> ^[5]	70	104	14.5 (12.8-16.2)	20.9 (19.8-22.0)	35.5 (33.5-37.5)
Cooper <i>et al</i> ^[6]	45	71	17.0 (15.1-18.9)	30.0 (28.4-31.6)	47.0 (43.5-50.5)
Soft-tissue release	283	431	18.9 (15.0-22.8)	26.6 (23.5-29.8)	46.1 (41.0-51.1)
Ippolito <i>et al</i> ^[11]	32	47	14.1 (12.2-16.0)	33.2 (30.7-35.7)	47.3 (42.9-51.7)
Dobbs <i>et al</i> ^[9]	45	73	12.8 (11.1-14.4)	23.3 (21.8-24.8)	36.1 (32.9-39.3)
Fridman <i>et al</i> ^[10]	50	71	20.8 (19.3-22.3)	22.5 (20.9-24.0)	43.3 (40.9-45.6)
Singh <i>et al</i> ^[12]	18	33	28.4 (27.0-29.8)	30.9 (29.2-32.6)	59.3 (56.2-62.4)
Prasad <i>et al</i> ^[13]	30	50	18.5 (16.2-20.8)	27.4 (24.6-30.1)	45.8 (43.3-48.4)
Herbsthofer <i>et al</i> ^[15]	38	62	16.1 (14.6-17.6)	23.0 (21.3-24.7)	39.1 (36.0-42.2)
Abulsaad <i>et al</i> ^[16]	54	70	16.4 (15.1-17.6)	21.4 (19.9-23.0)	42.2 (39.7-44.7)
Docquier <i>et al</i> ^[17]	16	25	24.3 (21.5-27.1)	32.2 (29.6-34.8)	56.5 (51.1-61.9)
Difference between treatment			Q = 2.09, P = 0.15	Q = 0.33, P = 0.57	Q = 0.002, P = 0.96

Table 3 Comparison of talus-1st metatarsal, 1st-5th metatarsal, and calcaneus-5th metatarsal angles between patients treated with the Ponseti method and surgically managed patients

Studies	Patients	Feet	Talus-1 st metatarsal		1 st -5 th metatarsal	
			AP mean (95%CI)	Lateral mean (95%CI)	Lateral mean (95%CI)	AP mean (95%CI)
All treatments	516	655	1.27 (-0.23-2.77)	6.24 (5.00-7.48)	15.6 (16.7-17.9)	-5.11 (-6.83 - -3.40)
Ponseti method	147	224	0.96 (-0.59-2.51)	5.51 (4.20-6.82)	15.4 (14.7-16.1)	-6.49 (-8.33 - -4.65)
Ippolito <i>et al</i> ^[11]	32	49	0.94 (-1.01-2.89)	6.39 (4.40-8.38)	15.5 (14.2-16.7)	-6.8 (-9.20 - -4.40)
Laaveg <i>et al</i> ^[5]	70	104	-	-	14.7 (13.5-15.9)	-4.9 (-6.92 - -2.88)
Cooper <i>et al</i> ^[6]	45	71	1 (-1.56-3.56)	5 (3.60-6.40)	16 (14.8-17.2)	-8 (-10.33 - -5.67)
Soft-tissue release	283	431	6.04 (-0.06-12.13)	12.08 (8.38-15.79)	25.2 (19.3-31.0)	3.86 (-0.84 - 8.57)
Ippolito <i>et al</i> ^[11]	32	47	8.28 (5.97-10.59)	9.4 (6.69-12.11)	22.1 (20.3-23.9)	-0.62 (-3.04 - 1.80)
Dobbs <i>et al</i> ^[9]	45	73	15.95 (13.24-18.66)	7.68 (4.06-11.30)	18.1 (15.4-20.8)	10.32 (8.55 - 12.09)
Fridman <i>et al</i> ^[10]	50	71	3.97 (1.27-6.67)	-	-	1.32 (-0.70 - 3.34)
Singh <i>et al</i> ^[12]	18	33	11.9 (9.89-13.91)	15.7 (13.14-18.26)	28.2 (25.9-30.5)	-
Prasad <i>et al</i> ^[13]	30	50	6.92 (2.49-11.35)	18.54 (11.90-25.18)	46.2 (38.7-53.7)	5.8 (2.22 - 9.38)
Herbsthofer <i>et al</i> ^[15]	38	62	10.29 (7.68-12.90)	-	-	9.95 (7.90 - 12.00)
Abulsaad <i>et al</i> ^[16]	54	70	-5.43 (-6.85-4.02)	-	-	-
Docquier <i>et al</i> ^[17]	16	25	-3.5 (-6.52-0.48)	10.9 (6.43-15.37)	15.9 (12.7-19.1)	-3.9 (-7.04 - -0.76)
Difference between treatment			Q = 2.50, P = 0.11	Q = 10.74, P = 0.001	Q = 10.48, P = 0.001	Q = 16.12, P < 0.001

adherent to low level of evidence studies analyzed and the relatively loose entry criteria.

Extensive soft-tissue release was the preferred method of treatment for many decades because it often provides definitive correction of the deformity. Full correction by addressing all components of the deformity was recommended. Surgical approaches most commonly used can be classified into three main categories: the Turco posteromedial incision^[34], the Crawford's circumferential Cincinnati incision^[35], and the two-incision Carroll approach^[36]. Ponseti *et al*^[33] pioneered his manipulative and serial casting technique in the late 1940s and first published his method in 1963. He proposed simultaneous correction of all components of clubfoot by abducting the foot under the talus while a counter pressure is applied to the talar head. Based on long-term follow-up studies of patients who underwent extensive soft-tissue releases for the management of idiopathic clubfoot before 1980, it has been shown that aggressive surgical

management results in poor long-term foot function due to pain, stiffness, and degenerative arthrosis^[1-4]. Until today, there is a lack in the literature of studies evaluating adults with clubfeet treated with selective posteromedial release techniques, as these were described after 1983. The present meta-analysis, by including data of clubfeet treated with both aggressive and comprehensive release techniques, demonstrated that patients managed with the Ponseti method had a higher rate of excellent or good outcomes than patients treated with open surgery.

Noncompliance of the family to follow the brace protocol is associated with unexpected high recurrence rate ranging from 30% to 45%^[7,37-49]. According to a recent study, there is no association between the poor bracing compliance and the families educational level, income or cultural origin^[50]. Distance from the treatment centers and accessibility to the health care system are important parameters that may also adversely affect compliance, and secondarily the success rate. In addition, concurrent

Table 4 Between and within-study heterogeneity in outcomes of clubfoot treatment

	Overall		Ponseti method		Soft-Tissue release	
	Q	I ²	Q	I ²	Q	I ²
Laaveg-Ponseti score	468.8 ^a	98.7	2.3	57.2	465.8 ^a	99.1
Excellent/Good Laaveg-Ponseti ratings	72.5 ^a	86.2	0.35	0	55.6 ^a	87.4
TCA-AP	346.8 ^a	97.1	4.1	50.9	312.5 ^a	97.8
TCA-LT	496.3 ^a	98.0	320.8 ^a	99.4	158.1 ^a	95.6
TCI	274.5 ^a	96.4	114.3 ^a	98.3	265.5 ^a	95.4
TMT-AP	376.3 ^a	97.6	0.001	0	365.2 ^a	98.1
TMT-LT	67.3 ^a	91.1	1.3	20.5	21.0 ^a	80.9
MTT-LT	203.8 ^a	96.6	2.3	12.0	89.0 ^a	95.5
CMT-AP	328.7 ^a	97.6	4.0	50.6	121.5 ^a	95.9

^aP < 0.05 vs patients who underwent open surgery, significant variability. TCA-AP: Anteroposterior talocalcaneal angle; TCA-LT: Lateral talocalcaneal angle; TCI: Talocalcaneal index; TMT-AP: Anteroposterior talus-first metatarsal angle; TMT-LT: Lateral talus-first metatarsal angle; MTT-LT: Lateral first-fifth metatarsal angle; CMT-AP: Anteroposterior calcaneus-fifth metatarsal angle.

Table 5 Correlations between functional and radiographic outcomes after clubfoot treatment

	Length of follow-up r (P value)	Laaveg-Ponseti excellent/good outcomes r (P value)
TCA-AP	-0.31 (0.39)	0.80 (0.006)
TCA-LT	0.43 (0.22)	-0.26 (0.46)
TCI	0.13 (0.73)	0.48 (0.16)
TMT-AP	0.27 (0.49)	-0.36 (0.34)
TMT-LT	-0.66 (0.16)	-0.06 (0.91)
CMT-AP	-0.26 (0.53)	-0.64 (0.091)
MTT-LT	0.11 (0.82)	-0.13 (0.79)

TCA-AP: Anteroposterior talocalcaneal angle; TCA-LT: Lateral talocalcaneal angle; TCI: Talocalcaneal index; TMT-AP: Anteroposterior talus-first metatarsal angle; TMT-LT: Lateral talus-first metatarsal angle; MTT-LT: Lateral first-fifth metatarsal angle.

illnesses may affect management of clubfeet with the Ponseti method.

In an effort to objectively evaluate idiopathic clubfoot, assess treatment, and classify residual deformities, a large number of angular measurements have been proposed on the anteroposterior and lateral radiographic projections^[51-53]. The TCA-AP and the TCA-LT, as well as the TCI (sum of TCA-AP and TCA-LT angles) are the most widely used parameters and reflect the anatomic relationship between the talus and the calcaneus. Among the other radiographic angles usually used in clinical practice, TMT-LT and MTT-LT angles measure midfoot cavus deformity, whereas TMT-AP and CMT-AP angles are expressions of forefoot adduction that characterize clubfoot. Our study did not reveal statistically significant difference in TCA-AP and TCA-LT angles between clubfeet treated with open surgery or the Ponseti method. The average TCI was measured above 40 in clubfeet managed with Ponseti method as well as in surgically treated clubfeet. A statistically significant difference was recorded in TMT-LT, MTT-LT, and CMT-AP angles.

Although radiographic evaluation has been extensively used as a measure of success of idiopathic clubfoot treatment, several authors have questioned the correlation between functional and radiographic outcomes as well as

the prognostic value of radiographs^[6,14,54,55]. Evaluation of radiographs is difficult to reproduce due to complexity of the deformity in various planes with multiple bone involvement, the small size or complete absence of ossific nuclei, particularly that of the navicular, the considerable overlap between radiographic values of normal feet and clubfeet, and difficulty in positioning the stiff and deformed foot^[56]. Furthermore, the use of different functional systems does not allow direct comparison between studies in order to identify any association between these radiographic parameters and the functional outcome. In the present meta-analysis, the Laaveg-Ponseti score was used to study the correlation between the clinical scoring and angular measurements since it does not rely on any radiographic parameters. A higher TCA-AP angle was associated with a better functional outcome. This is in agreement with several previous studies^[57,58], although many authors have found strong correlation between the functional rating and TCA-LT^[5,18,34,59,60] or TCI^[52,57,61]. Herbsthofner *et al*^[13] demonstrated no correlation between angular measurements and functional outcome. It is our opinion, however, that several radiographic parameters representing each of the clubfoot deformities should be used to provide a comprehensive radiological assessment of the three dimensional clubfoot deformities. By measuring TCA-AP, MTT-LT, and TMT-AP angles, the heel varus, midfoot cavus, and forefoot adduction, can be radiologically assessed and correlated with the functional outcome. In contrast, using a severity evaluation system that is based exclusively on radiographic criteria may overestimate the value of radiographs.

Long-term follow-up studies of treated clubfeet evaluating function beyond skeletal maturity are rare^[1-3,6,62]. The studies with the longer follow-up were those of Cooper *et al*^[6] with an average of follow-up of 34 years, Ippolito *et al*^[11] with an average duration of follow-up of 25 years, and Dobbs *et al*^[5] with a mean of follow-up of 30 years. Cooper *et al*^[6], evaluated 71 clubfeet in 45 patients treated with the Ponseti method. Seventy-eight percent of the patients had an excellent or good outcome. Mild arthrosis in the foot and ankle was found

in 35% of the patients. Twenty-seven percent of the patients had an excellent or good outcome. Ippolito *et al*¹¹ compared the results of adult patients with idiopathic clubfoot treated during infancy either with the Ponseti method or extensive soft-tissue release. They recorded better long-term functional outcomes when the former technique was used. The mean Laaveg-Ponseti score was 85.4 and 74.7 for the Ponseti method and surgically treated group, respectively. Seventy-eight percent of the patients treated with the Ponseti method had an excellent or good outcome. In contrast, only 43% of the patients treated with extensive soft-tissue release had an excellent or good outcome. Thirty percent of the surgically treated patients and 38% of the patients treated with the Ponseti method were found to have recurrences requiring additional intervention. Among these recurrences, 86% in the surgical group and 27% in the Ponseti group were major. Dobbs *et al*³ followed 73 clubfeet who had undergone either an extensive combined posterior, medial, and lateral release or a posterior release and plantar fasciotomy. They reported a correlation between the extent of soft-tissue release and the degree of functional impairment. Moderate to severe evidence of arthrosis in the foot and ankle was found in 56% of surgically treated patients. The mean Laaveg-Ponseti score was 65.3. Our study was in agreement with these findings, suggesting that foot function deteriorates over time in patients treated with open surgery. However, it should be noted that surgically treated patients in the last two long-term studies, as well as 20.87% of surgically treated clubfeet included in our study, were operated with extensive soft-tissue releases which does not represent the current surgical practice.

This study analyzed a large cohort of patients with idiopathic clubfoot and presented differences in the functional and radiographic outcomes based on the management employed. Although no statistically significant difference was noted in the overall functional outcomes between patients managed with the Ponseti method or open surgery, patients treated with the Ponseti method had a higher rate of excellent or good outcomes. Serial manipulation and casting has been widely accepted as the initial treatment of idiopathic clubfeet, and soft-tissue release is reserved for clubfeet that cannot be completely corrected. A strict brace compliance remains the major challenge of the Ponseti method.

COMMENTS

Background

During the second half of the twentieth century, the primary treatment of idiopathic clubfoot has ranged from gentle manipulations to aggressive surgical treatment. Although there are a plethora of studies that have assessed the functional and radiographic outcomes following different treatment protocols, there are only a few studies that directly compare open surgery and Ponseti method for the management of idiopathic clubfoot. This can be mainly attributed to variable and simplistic grading systems for scoring the severity of the deformity as well as the differing evaluation systems for assessing outcomes.

Research frontiers

The present study analyzed a large cohort of patients with idiopathic clubfoot and presented differences in the functional and radiographic outcomes based

on the management employed. The findings suggest that foot function deteriorates over time in patients treated with open surgery.

Innovations and breakthroughs

In the present long-term study, although no statistically significant difference was noted in the overall functional outcomes between patients managed with the Ponseti method or open surgery, patients treated with the Ponseti method had a higher rate of excellent or good outcomes. Serial manipulation and casting has been widely accepted as the initial treatment of idiopathic clubfeet, and soft-tissue release is reserved for clubfeet that cannot be completely corrected. A strict brace compliance remains the major challenge of the Ponseti method.

Applications

The study results suggest that serial manipulation and casting is the accepted initial treatment of idiopathic clubfeet, and soft-tissue release is reserved for clubfeet that cannot be completely corrected.

Terminology

Ponseti method is the conservative treatment of idiopathic clubfoot consisting of manipulations and serial casting, and frequently minimal invasive surgery.

Peer review

This is an excellent meta-analysis in which authors analyze a large cohort of patients with idiopathic clubfoot and presented differences in the functional and radiographic outcomes based on the management employed. The results are interesting and suggest that Ponseti method has a higher rate of excellent or good outcomes.

REFERENCES

- 1 Ippolito E, Farsetti P, Caterini R, Tudisco C. Long-term comparative results in patients with congenital clubfoot treated with two different protocols. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2003; **85-A**: 1286-1294 [PMID: 12851354]
- 2 Hutchins PM, Foster BK, Paterson DC, Cole EA. Long-term results of early surgical release in club feet. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 1985; **67**: 791-799 [PMID: 4055883]
- 3 Dobbs MB, Nunley R, Schoenecker PL. Long-term follow-up of patients with clubfeet treated with extensive soft-tissue release. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2006; **88**: 986-996 [PMID: 16651573 DOI: 10.2106/JBJS.E.00114]
- 4 Carroll NC. Clubfoot in the twentieth century: where we were and where we may be going in the twenty-first century. *J Pediatr Orthop B* 2012; **21**: 1-6 [PMID: 21946867 DOI: 10.1097/BPB.0B013E32834A99F2]
- 5 Laaveg SJ, Ponseti IV. Long-term results of treatment of congenital club foot. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 1980; **62**: 23-31 [PMID: 7351412]
- 6 Cooper DM, Dietz FR. Treatment of idiopathic clubfoot. A thirty-year follow-up note. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 1995; **77**: 1477-1489 [PMID: 7593056]
- 7 Halanski MA, Davison JE, Huang JC, Walker CG, Walsh SJ, Crawford HA. Ponseti method compared with surgical treatment of clubfoot: a prospective comparison. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2010; **92**: 270-278 [PMID: 20124052 DOI: 10.2106/JBJS.H.01560]
- 8 Karol LA, O'Brien SE, Wilson H, Johnston CE, Richards BS. Gait analysis in children with severe clubfeet: early results of physiotherapy versus surgical release. *J Pediatr Orthop* 2005; **25**: 236-240 [PMID: 15718909 DOI: 10.1097/01.BPO.0000150815.56790.B0]
- 9 Zwick EB, Kraus T, Maizen C, Steinwender G, Linhart WE. Comparison of Ponseti versus surgical treatment for idiopathic clubfoot: a short-term preliminary report. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2009; **467**: 2668-2676 [PMID: 19350335 DOI: 10.1007/S11999-009-0819-5]
- 10 Fridman MW, de Almeida Fialho HS. The role of radiographic measurements in the evaluation of congenital clubfoot surgical results. *Skeletal Radiol* 2007; **36**: 129-138 [PMID: 17047899 DOI: 10.1007/S00256-006-0204-3]
- 11 Schuh A, Göske R, Salminen S, Zeiler G, Schraml A. [Results of operative therapy of idiopathic clubfoot using a dorso-medial approach with soft tissue preparation "à la carte"].

- Zentralbl Chir* 2005; **130**: 568-575 [PMID: 16382406 DOI: 10.1055/S-2005-836801]
- 12 **Singh BI**, Vaishnavi AJ. Modified Turco procedure for treatment of idiopathic clubfoot. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2005; **438**: 209-214 [PMID: 16131893 DOI: 10.1097/01.BLO.0000173251.77826.05]
 - 13 **Prasad P**, Sen RK, Gill SS, Wardak E, Saini R. Clinico-radiological assessment and their correlation in clubfeet treated with postero-medial soft-tissue release. *Int Orthop* 2009; **33**: 225-229 [PMID: 17768623 DOI: 10.1007/S00264-007-0448-0]
 - 14 **Munshi S**, Varghese RA, Joseph B. Evaluation of outcome of treatment of congenital clubfoot. *J Pediatr Orthop* 2006; **26**: 664-672 [PMID: 16932109 DOI: 10.1097/01.BPO.0000229972.01436.EB]
 - 15 **Herbsthofer B**, Eckardt A, Rompe JD, Küllmer K. Significance of radiographic angle measurements in evaluation of congenital clubfoot. *Arch Orthop Trauma Surg* 1998; **117**: 324-329 [PMID: 9709844 DOI: 10.1007/S004020050259]
 - 16 **Abulsaad M**, Abdelgaber N. Correlation between clinical outcome of surgically treated clubfeet and different radiological parameters. *Acta Orthop Belg* 2008; **74**: 489-495 [PMID: 18811032]
 - 17 **Docquier PL**, Leemrijse T, Rombouts JJ. Clinical and radiographic features of operatively treated stiff clubfeet after skeletal maturity: etiology of the deformities and how to prevent them. *Foot Ankle Int* 2006; **27**: 29-37 [PMID: 16442026]
 - 18 **Haasbeek JF**, Wright JG. A comparison of the long-term results of posterior and comprehensive release in the treatment of clubfoot. *J Pediatr Orthop* 1997; **17**: 29-35 [PMID: 8989698 DOI: 10.1097/01241398-199701000-00009]
 - 19 **Barker S**, Chesney D, Miedzybrodzka Z, Maffulli N. Genetics and epidemiology of idiopathic congenital talipes equinovarus. *J Pediatr Orthop* 2003; **23**: 265-272 [PMID: 12604963 DOI: 10.1097/00004694-200303000-00025]
 - 20 **Isaacs H**, Handelsman JE, Badenhorst M, Pickering A. The muscles in club foot—a histological histochemical and electron microscopic study. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 1977; **59-B**: 465-472 [PMID: 925057]
 - 21 **Handelsman JE**, Badalamente MA. Neuromuscular studies in clubfoot. *J Pediatr Orthop* 1981; **1**: 23-32 [PMID: 7341648 DOI: 10.1097/01241398-198101010-00004]
 - 22 **Irani RN**, Sherman MS. The pathological anatomy of idiopathic clubfoot. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 1963; **45**: 45-52
 - 23 **Hootnick DR**, Levinsohn EM, Crider RJ, Packard DS. Congenital arterial malformations associated with clubfoot. A report of two cases. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 1982; **(167)**: 160-163 [PMID: 7094458]
 - 24 **Sodre H**, Bruschini S, Mestriner LA, Miranda F, Levinsohn EM, Packard DS, Crider RJ, Schwartz R, Hootnick DR. Arterial abnormalities in talipes equinovarus as assessed by angiography and the Doppler technique. *J Pediatr Orthop* 1990; **10**: 101-104 [PMID: 2405019 DOI: 10.1097/01241398-199010010-00020]
 - 25 **Muir L**, Laliotis N, Kutty S, Klenerman L. Absence of the dorsalis pedis pulse in the parents of children with club foot. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 1995; **77**: 114-116 [PMID: 7822366]
 - 26 **Ippolito E**, Ponseti IV. Congenital club foot in the human fetus. A histological study. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 1980; **62**: 8-22 [PMID: 7351421]
 - 27 **Farrell SA**, Summers AM, Dallaire L, Singer J, Johnson JA, Wilson RD. Club foot, an adverse outcome of early amniocentesis: disruption or deformation? CEMAT. Canadian Early and Mid-Trimester Amniocentesis Trial. *J Med Genet* 1999; **36**: 843-846 [PMID: 10544229]
 - 28 **Idelberger K**. Die Ergebnisseder Zwillingsforschung beim angeborenen Klumpfuß. *Verhandlungen der Deutschen Orthopädischen Gesellschaft* 1939; **33**: 272-276
 - 29 **Smith C**. Heritability of liability and concordance in monozygous twins. *Ann Hum Genet* 1970; **34**: 85-91 [PMID: 5476668 DOI: 10.1111/J.1469-1809.1970.TB00223.X]
 - 30 **Strach EH**. Club-foot through the centuries. *Prog Pediatr Surg* 1986; **20**: 215-237 [PMID: 3095875 DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-70825-1_16]
 - 31 **de Andrade M**, Barnholtz JS, Amos CI, Lochmiller C, Scott A, Risman M, Hecht JT. Segregation analysis of idiopathic talipes equinovarus in a Texan population. *Am J Med Genet* 1998; **79**: 97-102 [PMID: 9741466]
 - 32 **Lochmiller C**, Johnston D, Scott A, Risman M, Hecht JT. Genetic epidemiology study of idiopathic talipes equinovarus. *Am J Med Genet* 1998; **79**: 90-96 [PMID: 9741465]
 - 33 **Ponseti IV**, Smoley EN. Congenital club foot: the results of treatment. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 1963; **45**: 261-275
 - 34 **Turco VJ**. Resistant congenital club foot—one-stage postero-medial release with internal fixation. A follow-up report of a fifteen-year experience. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 1979; **61**: 805-814 [PMID: 479227]
 - 35 **Crawford AH**, Marxen JL, Osterfeld DL. The Cincinnati incision: a comprehensive approach for surgical procedures of the foot and ankle in childhood. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 1982; **64**: 1355-1358 [PMID: 7142243]
 - 36 **Carroll NC**. Surgical technique for talipes equinovarus. *Operative Technique in Orthop* 1993; **3**: 1115-1120 [DOI: 10.1016/S1048-6666(06)80028-5]
 - 37 **Dobbs MB**, Rudzki JR, Purcell DB, Walton T, Porter KR, Gurnett CA. Factors predictive of outcome after use of the Ponseti method for the treatment of idiopathic clubfeet. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2004; **86-A**: 22-27 [PMID: 14711941]
 - 38 **Haft GF**, Walker CG, Crawford HA. Early clubfoot recurrence after use of the Ponseti method in a New Zealand population. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2007; **89**: 487-493 [PMID: 17332096 DOI: 10.2106/JBJS.F.00169]
 - 39 **Dobbs MB**, Gurnett CA. Update on clubfoot: etiology and treatment. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2009; **467**: 1146-1153 [PMID: 19224303 DOI: 10.1007/S11999-009-0761-6]
 - 40 **Elshenawy EM**, Hassanen EY, Ramadam AI, Ibrahim MM. The Mansoura experience in the treatment of idiopathic clubfoot deformity using the Ponseti technique. *Acta Orthop Belg* 2008; **74**: 659-666 [PMID: 19058701]
 - 41 **Kessler JI**. A new flexible brace used in the Ponseti treatment of talipes equinovarus. *J Pediatr Orthop B* 2008; **17**: 247-250 [PMID: 19471177 DOI: 10.1097/BPB.0B013E32830CC3E5]
 - 42 **Boehm S**, Sinclair M. Foot abduction brace in the Ponseti method for idiopathic clubfoot deformity: torsional deformities and compliance. *J Pediatr Orthop* 2007; **27**: 712-716 [PMID: 17717477 DOI: 10.1097/BPO.0B013E3181425508]
 - 43 **Willis RB**, Al-Hunaisheh M, Guerra L, Kontio K. What proportion of patients need extensive surgery after failure of the Ponseti technique for clubfoot? *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2009; **467**: 1294-1297 [PMID: 19184263 DOI: 10.1007/S11999-009-0707-Z]
 - 44 **Abdelgawad AA**, Lehman WB, van Bosse HJ, Scher DM, Sala DA. Treatment of idiopathic clubfoot using the Ponseti method: minimum 2-year follow-up. *J Pediatr Orthop B* 2007; **16**: 98-105 [PMID: 17273035 DOI: 10.1097/BPB.0B013E32801048BB]
 - 45 **Thacker MM**, Scher DM, Sala DA, van Bosse HJ, Feldman DS, Lehman WB. Use of the foot abduction orthosis following Ponseti casts: is it essential? *J Pediatr Orthop* 2005; **25**: 225-228 [PMID: 15718907 DOI: 10.1097/01.BPO.0000150814.56790.F9]
 - 46 **Chen RC**, Gordon JE, Luhmann SJ, Schoenecker PL, Dobbs MB. A new dynamic foot abduction orthosis for clubfoot treatment. *J Pediatr Orthop* 2007; **27**: 522-528 [PMID: 17585260 DOI: 10.1097/BPO.0B013E318070CC19]
 - 47 **George HL**, Unnikrishnan PN, Garg NK, Sampath J, Bruce CE. Unilateral foot abduction orthosis: is it a substitute for Denis Browne boots following Ponseti technique? *J Pediatr Orthop B* 2011; **20**: 22-25 [PMID: 21030881 DOI: 10.1097/BPB.0B013E32833FB8A5]
 - 48 **Zionts LE**, Dietz FR. Bracing following correction of idiopathic clubfoot using the Ponseti method. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg* 2010; **18**: 486-493 [PMID: 20675641]
 - 49 **Avilucea FR**, Szalay EA, Bosch PP, Sweet KR, Schwend RM. Effect of cultural factors on outcome of Ponseti treatment of clubfeet in rural America. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2009; **91**:

- 530-540 [PMID: 19255212 DOI: 10.2106/JBJS.H.00580]
- 50 **Ramírez N**, Flynn JM, Fernández S, Seda W, Macchiavelli RE. Orthosis noncompliance after the Ponseti method for the treatment of idiopathic clubfeet: a relevant problem that needs reevaluation. *J Pediatr Orthop* 2011; **31**: 710-715 [PMID: 21841450 DOI: 10.1097/BPO.0B013E318221EAA1]
- 51 **Simons GW**. Analytical radiography of club feet. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 1977; **59-B**: 485-489 [PMID: 925058]
- 52 **Simons GW**. A standardized method for the radiographic evaluation of clubfeet. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 1978; **(135)**: 107-118 [PMID: 709918]
- 53 **Beatson TR**, Pearson JR. A method of assessing correction in club feet. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 1966; **48**: 40-50 [PMID: 5909064]
- 54 **Günther KP**, Uhl C, Puhl W. Ergebnisse operative Therapie beim idiopathischen Klumpfuß. *Orthop Praxis* 1996; **32**: 108-111
- 55 **Kausch T**, Rütt J, Hackenbroch MH, Fünfgeld B. [Treatment results of Imhäuser's method of treating neonatal clubfeet]. *Z Orthop Ihre Grenzgeb* 1995; **133**: 524-529 [PMID: 8571654 DOI: 10.1055/S-2008-1039933]
- 56 **Cummings RJ**, Davidson RS, Armstrong PF, Lehman WB. Congenital clubfoot. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2002; **84-A**: 290-308 [PMID: 11861737]
- 57 **Lau JH**, Meyer LC, Lau HC. Results of surgical treatment of talipes equinovarus congenita. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 1989; **(248)**: 219-226 [PMID: 2805484]
- 58 **Yamamoto H**, Furuya K. One-stage posteromedial release of congenital clubfoot. *J Pediatr Orthop* 1988; **8**: 590-595 [PMID: 3170741 DOI: 10.1097/01241398-198809000-00018]
- 59 **Ono K**, Hayashi H. Residual deformity of treated congenital club foot. A clinical study employing frontal tomography of the hind part of the foot. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 1974; **56**: 1577-1585 [PMID: 4434025]
- 60 **Thompson GH**, Richardson AB, Westin GW. Surgical management of resistant congenital talipes equinovarus deformities. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 1982; **64**: 652-665 [PMID: 7085691]
- 61 **Porat S**, Kaplan L. Critical analysis of results in club feet treated surgically along the Norris Carroll approach: seven years of experience. *J Pediatr Orthop* 1989; **9**: 137-143 [PMID: 2925846 DOI: 10.1097/01241398-198903000-00003]
- 62 **Aronson J**, Puskarich CL. Deformity and disability from treated clubfoot. *J Pediatr Orthop* 1990; **10**: 109-119 [PMID: 2137134 DOI: 10.1097/01241398-199010010-00022]

P- Reviewers Erkan S, Gorgey AS, Malik H **S- Editor** Zhai HH
L- Editor A **E- Editor** Zhang DN



Profunda femoris artery pseudoaneurysm following revision for femoral shaft fracture nonunion

Federico Valli, Marco GA Teli, Marco Innocenti, Ruggero Vercelli, Domenico Prestamburgo

Federico Valli, Marco GA Teli, Marco Innocenti, Domenico Prestamburgo, Department of Orthopaedic Surgery, Civile Regional Hospital, 20025 Legnano, Italy

Ruggero Vercelli, Department of Diagnostic and Interventional Radiology, Niguarda Cà Granda Regional Hospital, 20162 Milano, Italy

Author contributions: Valli F and Innocenti M were the attending surgeons; Vercelli R was the attending interventional radiologist; Teli MGA and Prestamburgo D designed and wrote the report.

Correspondence to: Marco GA Teli, MD, Department of Orthopaedic Surgery, Civile Regional Hospital, Via Papa Giovanni Paolo II, 20025 Legnano, Italy. marcoteli@hotmail.com

Telephone: +39-331-449828 Fax: +39-331-449593

Received: March 11, 2013 Revised: April 15, 2013

Accepted: May 8, 2013

Published online: July 18, 2013

Femoral shaft; Endovascular repair

Core tip: Femoral artery pseudoaneurysms (FAPs) are a reported possible complication of intramedullary nailing for acute femoral shaft fractures. In this report we describe the delayed occurrence of a FAP after revision surgery for femoral shaft nonunion, its diagnosis and management by endovascular repair and discuss the pertinent findings in the medical literature.

Valli F, Teli MGA, Innocenti M, Vercelli R, Prestamburgo D. Profunda femoris artery pseudoaneurysm following revision for femoral shaft fracture nonunion. *World J Orthop* 2013; 4(3): 154-156 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-5836/full/v4/i3/154.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5312/wjo.v4.i3.154>

Abstract

Femoral artery pseudoaneurysms (FAPs) have been described following internal fixation of intertrochanteric, subtrochanteric and intracapsular femoral neck fractures as well as core decompression of the femoral head. The diagnosis of FAP is usually delayed because of non-specific clinical features like pain, haematoma, swelling, occasional fever and unexplained anaemia. Because of the insidious onset and of the possible delayed presentation of pseudoaneurysms, orthopaedic and trauma surgeons should be aware of this complication. We report a case of Profunda Femoris arterial branch pseudoaneurysm, diagnosed in a 40-year-old male 4 wk after revision with Kuntscher intramedullary nail of a femoral shaft nonunion. The diagnosis was achieved by computed tomography angiography and the lesion was effectively managed by endovascular repair. The specific literature and suggestions for treatment are discussed in the paper.

© 2013 Baishideng. All rights reserved.

Key words: Arterial injury; Pseudoaneurysm; Nonunion;

INTRODUCTION

A pseudoaneurysm is a collection of blood leaking from a damaged arterial wall. The damage can be caused by traumatic or iatrogenic perforations. Femoral artery pseudoaneurysms (FAPs) have been described to arise after different surgical procedures, including internal fixation of intertrochanteric, subtrochanteric and intracapsular femoral neck fractures, intramedullary nailing of femur, core decompression of femoral head for osteonecrosis and revision total hip arthroplasty^[1-4].

Because of the insidious onset and possible delayed presentation of FAPs, orthopaedic and trauma surgeons should be aware of this complication. FAPs may close spontaneously if the tear is small enough to allow for clotting and sealing. On the other hand, rupture of the aneurysm can trigger thrombosis, distal embolization and compression of adjacent structures. Compartment syndrome of the thigh has also been observed after formation of a pseudoaneurysm of the femoral artery or of its branches^[1].

As far as treatment is concerned, small-sized FAPs can be managed by coil or balloon embolisation, stent



Figure 1 X-ray appearance of pseudoaneurysm. A: Anteroposterior and lateral radiograph of femoral shaft nonunion 8 mo after interlocking IM nailing; B: An ovoid, soft tissue mass behind the fracture site is visible 1 mo after exchange nailing.

graft repair, transducer-directed compression and other percutaneous or endoluminal treatments^[2].

We report a case of a profunda femoris arterial branch pseudoaneurysm, diagnosed in a 40-year-old male 4 wk after revision with Kuntscher intramedullary nail for a femoral shaft nonunion.

To the best of our knowledge this is the first report of femoral pseudoaneurysm occurring after intramedullary nailing for nonunion of the femoral shaft.

CASE REPORT

A 40-year-old male cyclist in good health was involved in a collision with a car that was travelling at 45 miles (65 km) per hour. He sustained an isolated, closed femoral shaft fracture. There were no concomitant abdominal or thoracic injuries. His Injury Severity Score was 9. On X-rays he showed a type 32-A2 fracture according to the AO-ASIF classification^[5].

The patient consented to have surgical treatment in the form of unreamed intramedullary nailing (T2 Femur Nail, Stryker Trauma). This was done on the day of injury. There were no reported intraoperative complications. Postoperative radiographs revealed a minimum gap between the proximal and distal fragments. The patient was discharged 4 d after surgery with progressive weight bearing on an assisted rehabilitation protocol. He obtained a complete range of motion after 1 wk and full weight bearing after 1 mo, but he complained of a degree of pain during ambulation.

X-rays at 8 mo follow-up revealed nonunion (Figure 1A). After consulting the patient, a revision with intramedullary exchange nailing was planned with reamed insertion. This involved the removal of a previously placed implant and reaming the medullary canal to a larger diameter. The diameter of the new nail (Kuntscher Nail, Stryker Trauma) was 2 mm larger than that of the previous nail and the intramedullary canal was over-reamed by 1 mm more than the diameter of the new nail. Postoperatively, the hemoglobin level never fell down under 9.0 g/dL, without any signs and symptoms of hypovolemia.

Four weeks after surgery, a tender swelling over the

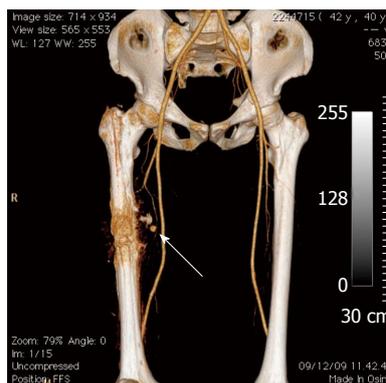


Figure 2 Computed tomography appearance of pseudoaneurysm. Computed tomographic angiogram showing pseudoaneurysm of profunda femoris artery (arrow).

medial thigh was noted, and radiographs revealed an ovoid soft tissue mass behind the fracture site (Figure 1B). A residual hematoma (confirmed by duplex ultrasound) was diagnosed, and observation was recommended based on intact distal pulses and neurological function.

However, 3 wk later the enlargement of the mass had continued and associated pulsatile swelling was noticed. A pseudoaneurysm instead of a simple hematoma was suspected. Further investigation, including computer tomographic angiography, confirmed a lesion originating from a profunda femoris arterial branch adjacent to the fracture site (Figure 2).

The patient was therefore referred to an Interventional Radiology department. An angiogram confirmed a rapidly enhancing pseudoaneurysm sac arising from a branch of the right profunda femoris artery. Using a microcatheter, the segmental branch feeding the pseudoaneurysm was selectively cannulated (Figure 3A) and a total of five microcoils (3 mm × 3 cm) were deployed in the vessel distally and proximally to the pseudoaneurysm neck. After embolisation, a control angiogram showed satisfactory hemostasis with occlusion of the feeding vessel, no further filling of the pseudoaneurysm, and no extravasation of contrast (Figure 3B). The compressive discomforts were quickly relieved.

Over the next 6 mo, intact neurovascular status without recurrent painful swelling or reported complications were observed. No additional complications arose during follow-up. The femoral shaft nonunion healed at 6 mo follow-up (Figure 4).

DISCUSSION

There are different causes of FAP caused by orthopaedic procedures reported in the literature. Arterial damage can occur because of bone spikes, screws, drills, displaced implants and retraction of surrounding tissues^[6]. Others reports stress the point that locking screws are potential causes of FAPs in case of penetration of inner cortex^[7]. The most likely cause of the pseudoaneurysm seen in this case report was over penetration of the drill bit during the intramedullary exchange nailing with reamed inser-

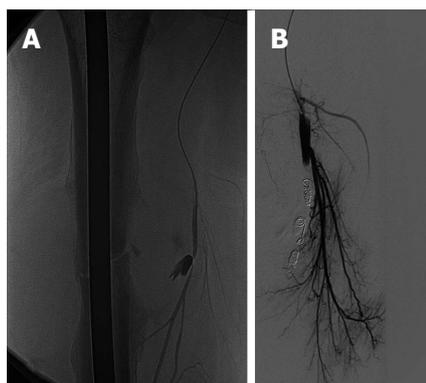


Figure 3 Embolisation. Elective (microcatheter) right deep femoral angiography pictures showing the pseudoaneurysm adjacent to the fracture site. A: Before coil embolization; B: After coil embolization (digital subtraction angiography).

tion. The drilling probably injured the arterial wall with subsequent external hemorrhage.

Early diagnosis of a pseudoaneurysm of the femoral artery or one of its branches can be done if non-specific clinical signs are evaluated and any swelling over the medial aspect of the proximal thigh is investigated properly. However, these findings may be normal when the injury only involves a minor vessel.

The time frame necessary to detect traumatic pseudoaneurysms varies from hours to years depending on the involved region and clinical signs. Clinical manifestations include an enlarging pulsatile swelling, audible bruit, palpable thrill, pain, edema and compressive neuropathy. Without a clear history of trauma, the lesion may mimic some soft tissue conditions like abscesses or neoplasms. Because of the presence of heat and tenderness in the surrounding area, the inflammation during the organisation of the hematoma may appear as a postoperative infection^[8]. Therefore, a high index of suspicion and radiological imaging [particularly computed tomography (CT) angiography and duplex ultrasonography] plays a major role in obtaining a diagnosis. Multidetector CT angiography enables 3-dimensional reformatting of the lower limb vasculature. Although the image quality can be impaired by metallic implants, it is a quick and non-invasive method, with high sensitivity (90%-95%) and specificity (98%-100%) for detecting arterial injury after trauma^[9].

The management of pseudoaneurysms depends mostly on their location and size. Small asymptomatic lesions or those involving non-critical vessels may be observed for 4-6 wk to detect possible spontaneous recovery. However, active intervention is indicated in larger (> 3 cm) symptomatic lesions. Current therapeutic approaches include open surgical repair, ultrasound-guided compression, ultrasound-guided thrombin injection and endovascular repair using coil embolization or stent-graft insertion as seen in this case.

In conclusion, to the best of our knowledge this is



Figure 4 Fracture healing. Anteroposterior and lateral radiograph of the femoral shaft 6 mo from revision surgery, showing fracture union.

the first report of a delayed pseudoaneurysm caused by drilling during a revision intramedullary nailing for femoral shaft nonunion. Therefore, a pseudoaneurysm should be suspected not only in fracture cases, but also in revisions of nonunions. Due to the rarity of the condition, in case of suspicion the early use of CT angiography is highly recommended. Endovascular repair is an effective minimally invasive treatment for delayed pseudoaneurysms of the femoral artery.

REFERENCES

- 1 **Tiwary SK**, Kumar S, Khanna R, Khanna AK. Iatrogenic femoral artery aneurysms in orthopaedic practice. *ANZ J Surg* 2007; **77**: 899-901 [PMID: 17803559 DOI: 10.1111/j.1445-2197.2007.04269.x]
- 2 **Ariyoshi H**, Miyaso S, Aono Y, Kawasaki T, Sakon M, Monden M. Delayed presentation of superficial femoral artery injury: report of a case. *Surg Today* 2001; **31**: 471-473 [PMID: 11381518 DOI: 10.1007/s005950170145]
- 3 **Unay K**, Poyanli O, Akan K, Poyanli A. Profunda femoris artery pseudoaneurysm after surgery and trauma. *Strategies Trauma Limb Reconstr* 2008; **3**: 127-129 [PMID: 18780187 DOI: 10.1007/s11751-008-0043-y]
- 4 **Sethuraman V**, Hozack WJ, Sharkey PF, Rothman RH. Pseudoaneurysm of femoral artery after revision total hip arthroplasty with a constrained cup. *J Arthroplasty* 2000; **15**: 531-534 [PMID: 10884217 DOI: 10.1054/arth.2000.4332]
- 5 **Muller ME**, Nazarian S, Koch P. The comprehensive classification of fractures of long bones. Berlin: Springer, 1990 [DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-61261-9]
- 6 **Yang KH**, Park HW, Park SJ. Pseudoaneurysm of the superficial femoral artery after closed hip nailing with a Gamma nail: report of a case. *J Orthop Trauma* 2002; **16**: 124-127 [PMID: 11818808]
- 7 **Bose D**, Hauptfleisch J, McNally M. Delayed pseudoaneurysm caused by distal locking screw of a femoral intramedullary nail: a case report. *J Orthop Trauma* 2006; **20**: 584-586 [PMID: 16990733 DOI: 10.1097/01.bot.0000245003.83245.58]
- 8 **Huttunen J**. Clinico-pathological conference XXIV. Polycythemia, cardiomyopathy and crural deep venous thrombosis. *Duodecim* 1975; **91**: 607-615 [PMID: 1175488 DOI: 10.1016/S0020-1383(01)00094-8]
- 9 **Ahmad F**, Turner SA, Torrie P, Gibson M. Iatrogenic femoral artery pseudoaneurysms--a review of current methods of diagnosis and treatment. *Clin Radiol* 2008; **63**: 1310-1316 [PMID: 18996260 DOI: 10.1016/j.crad.2008.07.001]

P- Reviewer Bose D S- Editor Gou SX L- Editor A
E- Editor Ma S



Solid fusion after lumbosacral arthroplasty

Sang-Hoon Jang, Ho-Yeon Lee, Ji-Young Cho, Sang-Ho Lee

Sang-Hoon Jang, Ho-Yeon Lee, Ji-Young Cho, Sang-Ho Lee, Department of Neurosurgery, Wooridul Spine Hospital, Seoul 135-100, South Korea

Author contributions: All the authors contributed to this article. Supported by A grant from the Wooridul Spine Hospital
Correspondence to: Ho-Yeon Lee, MD, PhD, Department of Neurosurgery, Wooridul Spine Hospital, 47-4 Chungdam-dong, Gangnam-gu, Seoul 135-100,

South Korea. mediple@yahoo.co.kr

Telephone: +82-2-5138943 Fax: +82-2-5138146

Received: July 16, 2012 Revised: February 20, 2013

Accepted: March 28, 2013

Published online: July 18, 2013

formed. Clinical and radiographic monitoring took place thereafter at one month, three months, six months and annually. A malpositioned disc implant may impair normal spinal movement, culminating in heterotopic ossification or complete fusion of the operated segment.

Jang SH, Lee HY, Cho JY, Lee SH. Solid fusion after lumbosacral arthroplasty. *World J Orthop* 2013; 4(3): 157-160 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-5836/full/v4/i3/157.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5312/wjo.v4.i3.157>

Abstract

A 55-year-old female was diagnosed with L5-S1 degenerative disc disease (DDD). Initial scores by the visual analogue scale (VAS) were 5 (back) and 9 (leg) and the Oswestry disability index (ODI) was 32. Arthroplasty was performed. Clinical and radiographic monitoring took place thereafter at one month, three months, six months and annually. At one month, VAS scores were 2 (back) and 3 (leg), ODI was 12 and ROM was 2.1° by radiographs. At two years, VAS scores were 1 (back) and 2 (leg), ODI was 6 and ROM was approaching 0. Five years after surgery, the entire operated segment (L5-S1) was solidly fused. A malpositioned disc implant may impair normal spinal movement, culminating in heterotopic ossification or complete fusion of the operated segment.

© 2013 Baishideng. All rights reserved.

Key words: Total disc replacement; Lumbar spine; Heterotopic ossification; Fusion, Arthroplasty; Solid fusion

Core tip: A 55-year-old female was diagnosed with L5-S1 degenerative disc disease. Initial scores by the visual analogue scale were 5 (back) and 9 (leg) and the Oswestry disability index was 32. Arthroplasty was per-

INTRODUCTION

Total disc replacement (TDR) is currently advocated for degenerative disc disease (DDD) as a substitute for fusion surgery in certain cases. In theory, TDR may preserve normal range of motion (ROM) in diseased segments and prevent adjacent segment degeneration (ASD)^[1-3]. However, a number of complications undermining these benefits have been observed following lumbar TDR, such as heterotopic ossification, facet arthrosis, subsidence, ASD and device migration^[1-5]. This report details an unusual occurrence of solid spinal fusion subsequent to lumbosacral TDR and the factors likely contributing to device failure.

CASE REPORT

A 55-year-old female was hospitalized for low back pain radiating to the left thigh and calf. Her past medical history was otherwise unremarkable. Initial scores by the visual analogue scale (VAS) were 5 (back) and 9 (leg) and the Oswestry disability index (ODI) was 32. Radiographic findings were indicative of DDD at the L5-S1 level. After six weeks of unproductive nonsurgical therapy (NSAID, physical therapy), she underwent lumbosacral TDR. Preoperative ROM was 8.6° by radiographs and preoperative computed tomography and magnetic resonance image shows no stenosis or facet arthroplasty at the L5-S1

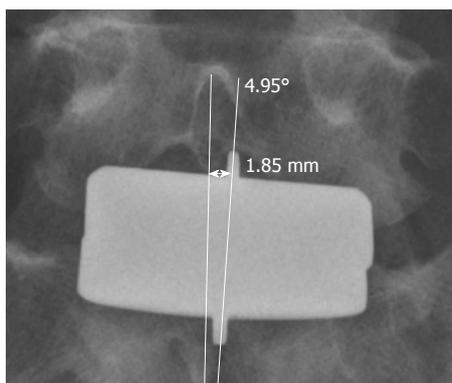


Figure 1 In the anteroposterior view, the superior endplate of the implant deviated 1.85 mm to the left of midline with 4.95° angular displacement.

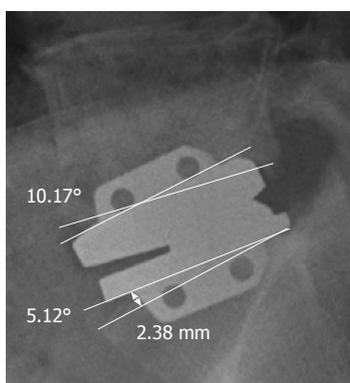


Figure 2 In the lateral view, angular gaps of 10.17° and 5.12° existed between the upper and lower implant endplates, respectively, and 2.38 mm of the lower anterior vertical keel did not insert completely into the S1 upper endplate.

level. The procedure entailed standard left-sided anterior retroperitoneal^[4] insertion of a Maverick[®] (Medtronic Sofamor Danek, Inc., Memphis, TN, United states) implant, requiring 120 min to complete. Estimated blood loss was 200 cc.

In the immediate postoperative period, the patient's condition was satisfactory. There were no significant early complications. Nevertheless, radiographs showed that the superior endplate of the implant deviated 1.85 mm to the left of midline in anterior-posterior (AP) view, with 4.95° angular displacement (Figure 1). In the lateral view, angular gaps of 10.17° and 5.12° existed between the upper and lower implant endplates, respectively, and 2.38 mm of the lower anterior vertical keel did not insert completely into the S1 upper endplate (Figure 2). The patient's clinical course was uneventful. Four days postoperatively, VAS scores were 3 (back) and 4 (leg) and she was discharged seven days after surgery in a stable condition. Clinical status and standing lateral radiographs were evaluated at each follow-up visit. At one month, VAS scores were 2 (back) and 3 (leg), ODI was 12 and ROM was 2.1° by radiographs (Figure 3). At two years, VAS scores were 1 (back) and 2 (leg), ODI was 6 and ROM was approaching 0° (Figure 4). VAS scores and ODI

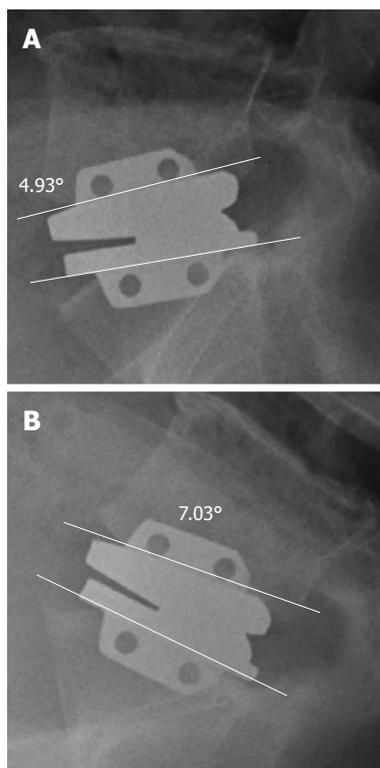


Figure 3 One month after the operation, range of motion of the implant was checked 2.1° (Left: Extension; Right: Flexion).

were unchanged at three years, but calcific bony spurs (heterotopic calcification) were noted on radiographs at the anterior and posterior implant margins (Figure 5). At the final follow-up (five years), VAS scores of 1 (back) and 1 (leg) and ODI of 3 were recorded. By radiographs, the L5-S1 segment was completely fused (Figure 6).

DISCUSSION

The increasing surgical use of artificial discs has raised concern due to related heterotopic ossification (HO). While the etiology of HO remains unclear, perioperative bleeding, implant milieu and ancillary patient conditions (*i.e.*, diffuse idiopathic skeletal hyperostosis) have been implicated^[5].

The incidence of HO has been cited as 4.3% in two years of follow-up by Tortolani *et al*^[6] who found no effect on ROM or clinical outcomes attributable to HO. They also remarked that the onset of HO was unlikely past the sixth postoperative month. On the other hand, Lemaire *et al*^[7] reported a 3% rate of HO after a minimum follow-up of 10 years, all manifested later than five years postoperatively. Finally, Park *et al*^[5] detected HO at a rate of 30.5% within 17 mo (on average) after TDR. Four cases actually emerged beyond the third postoperative year. They further cautioned that HO may progress during follow-up, making long-term monitoring imperative. Of note, Fransen *et al*^[8] believe nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) to be protective in this regard.

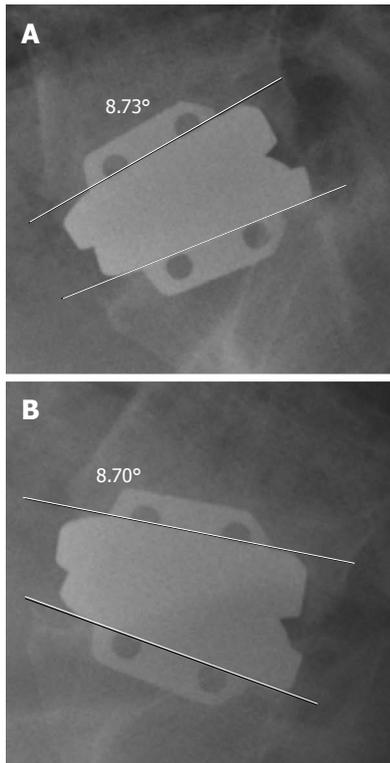


Figure 4 Two years after the operation, radiograph (Above: Extension; Below: Flexion) shows range of motion of the implant was almost 0°.

Implant placement was unsatisfactory in our patient, deviating to the left of midline with angular gaps between the implant endplates and adjacent vertebrae. The implant was also misaligned in the AP plane, improperly inserting into the body of S1 (Figures 1 and 2). In retrospect, we believe that decompression at the L5-S1 posterior lip was excessive, creating a sunken base posteriorly for the implant and impairing its placement as described above. Normal movement clearly appeared compromised as a consequence. ROM was only 2.1° one month after surgery (Figure 3), HO had developed after two years and at the final 5-year follow-up, the operated segment was solidly fused (Figures 5 and 6). According to Huang *et al*^[9], the risk of ASD after TDR (followed 8.7 years) is higher when ROM is low (less than 5°). A malpositioned implant may thus produce an outcome over time that is tantamount to fusion surgery, with heightened potential for ASD.

There are obvious limitations to the observations drawn from this single patient. Results here are based on the Maverick[®] implant specifically and may not apply to all TDR devices. Furthermore, we could not closely pinpoint the onset of HO or spinal fusion once follow-up visits were extended to annual intervals. Nevertheless, we feel that implant positioning may be critical in development of HO by impacting ROM.

In conclusion, a malpositioned implant may impair normal spinal movement, leading to HO or complete fusion of the operated segment. As a preventative measure, careful preparation of the bony endplate and precise alignment of the implant in the coronal and sagittal

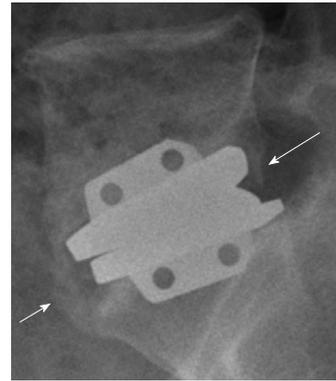


Figure 5 Three years after the operation, calcified spurs (heterotopic ossification) were identified (arrow) at the anterior and posterior margin of the implant.

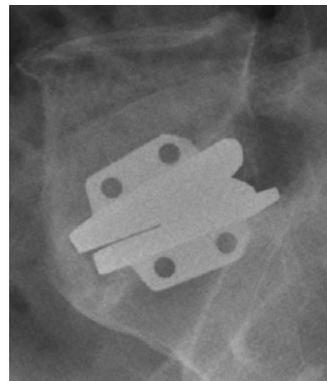


Figure 6 At the last follow-up (5 years), more prominent bony masses were identified and the L5-S1 segment was fused completely.

planes is warranted.

REFERENCES

- 1 **Putzier M**, Funk JF, Schneider SV, Gross C, Tohtz SW, Khodadadyan-Klostermann C, Perka C, Kandziora F. Charité total disc replacement—clinical and radiographical results after an average follow-up of 17 years. *Eur Spine J* 2006; **15**: 183-195 [PMID: 16254716 DOI: 10.1007/s00586-005-1022-3]
- 2 **Regan JJ**. Clinical results of charité lumbar total disc replacement. *Orthop Clin North Am* 2005; **36**: 323-340 [PMID: 15950692 DOI: 10.1016/j.joc.2005.03.005]
- 3 **Chung SS**, Lee CS, Kang CS. Lumbar total disc replacement using ProDisc II: a prospective study with a 2-year minimum follow-up. *J Spinal Disord Tech* 2006; **19**: 411-415 [PMID: 16891976 DOI: 10.1097/00024720-200608000-00007]
- 4 **Geisler FH**. Surgical technique of lumbar artificial disc replacement with the Charité artificial disc. *Neurosurgery* 2005; **56**: 46-57; discussion 46-57 [PMID: 15799792 DOI: 10.1227/01.NEU.0000153215.60994.D3]
- 5 **Park SJ**, Kang KJ, Shin SK, Chung SS, Lee CS. Heterotopic ossification following lumbar total disc replacement. *Int Orthop* 2011; **35**: 1197-1201 [PMID: 20652248 DOI: 10.1007/s00264-010-1095-4]
- 6 **Tortolani PJ**, Cunningham BW, Eng M, McAfee PC, Holsapple GA, Adams KA. Prevalence of heterotopic ossification following total disc replacement. A prospective, randomized study of two hundred and seventy-six patients. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2007; **89**: 82-88 [PMID: 17200314 DOI: 10.2106/JBJS.

F.00432]

- 7 **Lemaire JP**, Carrier H, Sariali el-H, Skalli W, Lavaste F. Clinical and radiological outcomes with the Charité artificial disc: a 10-year minimum follow-up. *J Spinal Disord Tech* 2005; **18**: 353-359 [PMID: 16021017 DOI: 10.1097/01.bsd.0000172361.07479.6b]
- 8 **Fransen M**, Neal B. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs for preventing heterotopic bone formation after hip arthroplasty. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2004; (3): CD001160 [PMID: 15266441]
- 9 **Huang RC**, Tropiano P, Marnay T, Girardi FP, Lim MR, Cammisa FP. Range of motion and adjacent level degeneration after lumbar total disc replacement. *Spine J* 2006; **6**: 242-247 [PMID: 16651217 DOI: 10.1016/j.spinee.2005.04.013]

P-Reviewer Panchal R **S-Editor** Huang XZ
L-Editor Roemmele A **E-Editor** Zhang DN



GENERAL INFORMATION

World Journal of Orthopedics (*World J Orthop*, *WJO*, online ISSN 2218-5836, DOI: 10.5312) is a peer-reviewed open access (OA) academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

Aim and scope

WJO covers topics concerning arrhythmia, heart failure, vascular disease, stroke, hypertension, prevention and epidemiology, dyslipidemia and metabolic disorders, cardiac imaging, pediatrics, nursing, and health promotion. Priority publication will be given to articles concerning diagnosis and treatment of orthopedics diseases. The following aspects are covered: Clinical diagnosis, laboratory diagnosis, differential diagnosis, imaging tests, pathological diagnosis, molecular biological diagnosis, immunological diagnosis, genetic diagnosis, functional diagnostics, and physical diagnosis; and comprehensive therapy, drug therapy, surgical therapy, interventional treatment, minimally invasive therapy, and robot-assisted therapy.

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJO*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great basic and clinical significance.

WJO is edited and published by Baishideng Publishing Group (BPG). BPG has a strong professional editorial team composed of science editors, language editors and electronic editors. BPG currently publishes 42 OA clinical medical journals, including 41 in English, has a total of 15471 editorial board members or peer reviewers, and is a world first-class publisher.

Columns

The columns in the issues of *WJO* will include: (1) Editorial: The editorial board members are invited to make comments on an important topic in their field in terms of its current research status and future directions to lead the development of this discipline; (2) Frontier: The editorial board members are invited to select a highly cited cutting-edge original paper of his/her own to summarize major findings, the problems that have been resolved and remain to be resolved, and future research directions to help readers understand his/her important academic point of view and future research directions in the field; (3) Diagnostic Advances: The editorial board members are invited to write high-quality diagnostic advances in their field to improve the diagnostic skills of readers. The topic covers general clinical diagnosis, differential diagnosis, pathological diagnosis, laboratory diagnosis, imaging diagnosis, endoscopic diagnosis, biotechnological diagnosis, functional diagnosis, and physical diagnosis; (4) Therapeutics Advances: The editorial board members are invited to write high-quality therapeutic advances in their field to help improve the therapeutic skills of readers. The topic covers medication therapy, psychotherapy, physical therapy, replacement therapy, interventional therapy, minimally invasive therapy, endoscopic therapy, transplantation therapy, and surgical therapy; (5) Field of Vision: The editorial board members are invited to write commentaries on classic articles, hot topic articles, or latest articles to keep readers at the forefront of research and increase their levels of clinical research. Classic articles refer to papers that are included in Web of Knowledge and have received a large number of citations (ranking in the top 1%) after being published for more than years, reflecting the quality and impact of papers. Hot topic articles refer to papers that are included in

Web of Knowledge and have received a large number of citations after being published for no more than 2 years, reflecting cutting-edge trends in scientific research. Latest articles refer to the latest published high-quality papers that are included in PubMed, reflecting the latest research trends. These commentary articles should focus on the status quo of research, the most important research topics, the problems that have now been resolved and remain to be resolved, and future research directions. Basic information about the article to be commented (including authors, article title, journal name, year, volume, and inclusive page numbers); (6) Minireviews: The editorial board members are invited to write short reviews on recent advances and trends in research of molecular biology, genomics, and related cutting-edge technologies to provide readers with the latest knowledge and help improve their diagnostic and therapeutic skills; (7) Review: To make a systematic review to focus on the status quo of research, the most important research topics, the problems that have now been resolved and remain to be resolved, and future research directions; (8) Topic Highlight: The editorial board members are invited to write a series of articles (7-10 articles) to comment and discuss a hot topic to help improve the diagnostic and therapeutic skills of readers; (9) Medical Ethics: The editorial board members are invited to write articles about medical ethics to increase readers' knowledge of medical ethics. The topic covers international ethics guidelines, animal studies, clinical trials, organ transplantation, etc.; (10) Clinical Case Conference or Clinicopathological Conference: The editorial board members are invited to contribute high-quality clinical case conference; (11) Original Articles: To report innovative and original findings in orthopedics; (12) Brief Articles: To briefly report the novel and innovative findings in orthopedics; (13) Meta-Analysis: To evaluate the clinical effectiveness in orthopedics by using data from two or more randomised control trials; (14) Case Report: To report a rare or typical case; (15) Letters to the Editor: To discuss and make reply to the contributions published in *WJO*, or to introduce and comment on a controversial issue of general interest; (16) Book Reviews: To introduce and comment on quality monographs of orthopedics; and (17) Autobiography: The editorial board members are invited to write their autobiography to provide readers with stories of success or failure in their scientific research career. The topic covers their basic personal information and information about when they started doing research work, where and how they did research work, what they have achieved, and their lessons from success or failure.

Name of journal

World Journal of Orthopedics

ISSN

ISSN 2218-5836 (online)

Launch date

November 18, 2010

Frequency

Quarterly

Editor-in-Chief

Bao-Gan Peng, MD, PhD, Professor, Department of Spinal Surgery, General Hospital of Armed Police Force, 69 Yongding

Instructions to authors

Road, Beijing 100039, China

Editorial office

Jin-Lei Wang, Director

Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director

World Journal of Orthopedics

Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,

Beijing 100025, China

Telephone: +86-10-85381891

Fax: +86-10-85381893

E-mail: wjo@wjnet.com

<http://www.wjnet.com>

Publisher

Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited

Flat C, 23/F, Lucky Plaza, 315-321 Lockhart Road,

Wan Chai, Hong Kong, China

Fax: +852-65557188

Telephone: +852-31779906

E-mail: bpgoffice@wjnet.com

<http://www.wjnet.com>

Production center

Beijing Baishideng BioMed Scientific Co., Limited

Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,

No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,

Beijing 100025, China

Telephone: +86-10-85381892

Fax: +86-10-85381893

Representative office

USA Office

8226 Regency Drive,

Pleasanton, CA 94588-3144, United States

Instructions to authors

Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjnet.com/2218-5836/g_info_20100316161927.htm.

Indexed and Abstracted in

PubMed Central, PubMed, Digital Object Identifier, and Directory of Open Access Journals.

SPECIAL STATEMENT

All articles published in this journal represent the viewpoints of the authors except where indicated otherwise.

Biostatistical editing

Statistical review is performed after peer review. We invite an expert in Biomedical Statistics to evaluate the statistical method used in the paper, including *t*-test (group or paired comparisons), chi-squared test, Ridit, probit, logit, regression (linear, curvilinear, or stepwise), correlation, analysis of variance, analysis of covariance, *etc.* The reviewing points include: (1) Statistical methods should be described when they are used to verify the results; (2) Whether the statistical techniques are suitable or correct; (3) Only homogeneous data can be averaged. Standard deviations are preferred to standard errors. Give the number of observations and subjects (*n*). Losses in observations, such as drop-outs from the study should be reported; (4) Values such as ED50, LD50, IC50 should have their 95% confidence limits calculated and compared by weighted probit analysis (Bliss and Finney); and (5) The word 'significantly' should be replaced by its synonyms (if it indicates extent) or the *P* value (if it indicates statistical significance).

Conflict-of-interest statement

In the interests of transparency and to help reviewers assess any potential bias, *WJO* requires authors of all papers to declare any competing commercial, personal, political, intellectual, or religious interests

in relation to the submitted work. Referees are also asked to indicate any potential conflict they might have reviewing a particular paper. Before submitting, authors are suggested to read "Uniform Requirements for Manuscripts Submitted to Biomedical Journals: Ethical Considerations in the Conduct and Reporting of Research: Conflicts of Interest" from International Committee of Medical Journal Editors (ICMJE), which is available at: http://www.icmje.org/ethical_4conflicts.html.

Sample wording: [Name of individual] has received fees for serving as a speaker, a consultant and an advisory board member for [names of organizations], and has received research funding from [names of organization]. [Name of individual] is an employee of [name of organization]. [Name of individual] owns stocks and shares in [name of organization]. [Name of individual] owns patent [patent identification and brief description].

Statement of informed consent

Manuscripts should contain a statement to the effect that all human studies have been reviewed by the appropriate ethics committee or it should be stated clearly in the text that all persons gave their informed consent prior to their inclusion in the study. Details that might disclose the identity of the subjects under study should be omitted. Authors should also draw attention to the Code of Ethics of the World Medical Association (Declaration of Helsinki, 1964, as revised in 2004).

Statement of human and animal rights

When reporting the results from experiments, authors should follow the highest standards and the trial should conform to Good Clinical Practice (for example, US Food and Drug Administration Good Clinical Practice in FDA-Regulated Clinical Trials; UK Medicines Research Council Guidelines for Good Clinical Practice in Clinical Trials) and/or the World Medical Association Declaration of Helsinki. Generally, we suggest authors follow the lead investigator's national standard. If doubt exists whether the research was conducted in accordance with the above standards, the authors must explain the rationale for their approach and demonstrate that the institutional review body explicitly approved the doubtful aspects of the study.

Before submitting, authors should make their study approved by the relevant research ethics committee or institutional review board. If human participants were involved, manuscripts must be accompanied by a statement that the experiments were undertaken with the understanding and appropriate informed consent of each. Any personal item or information will not be published without explicit consents from the involved patients. If experimental animals were used, the materials and methods (experimental procedures) section must clearly indicate that appropriate measures were taken to minimize pain or discomfort, and details of animal care should be provided.

SUBMISSION OF MANUSCRIPTS

Manuscripts should be typed in 1.5 line spacing and 12 pt. Book Antiqua with ample margins. Number all pages consecutively, and start each of the following sections on a new page: Title Page, Abstract, Introduction, Materials and Methods, Results, Discussion, Acknowledgements, References, Tables, Figures, and Figure Legends. Neither the editors nor the publisher are responsible for the opinions expressed by contributors. Manuscripts formally accepted for publication become the permanent property of Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited, and may not be reproduced by any means, in whole or in part, without the written permission of both the authors and the publisher. We reserve the right to copyedit and put onto our website accepted manuscripts. Authors should follow the relevant guidelines for the care and use of laboratory animals of their institution or national animal welfare committee. For the sake of transparency in regard to the performance and reporting of clinical trials, we endorse the policy of the ICMJE to refuse to publish papers on clinical trial results if the trial was not recorded in a publicly-accessible registry at its outset. The only register now available, to our knowledge, is <http://www.clinicaltrials.gov> sponsored by the United States National Library of Medicine and we encourage all potential contributors to register with it. However, in the case that other registers become available you will be duly notified.

A letter of recommendation from each author's organization should be provided with the contributed article to ensure the privacy and secrecy of research is protected.

Authors should retain one copy of the text, tables, photographs and illustrations because rejected manuscripts will not be returned to the author(s) and the editors will not be responsible for loss or damage to photographs and illustrations sustained during mailing.

Online submissions

Manuscripts should be submitted through the Online Submission System at: <http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/>. Authors are highly recommended to consult the ONLINE INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS (http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-5836/g_info_20100316161927.htm) before attempting to submit online. For assistance, authors encountering problems with the Online Submission System may send an email describing the problem to wjo@wjgnet.com, or by telephone: +86-10-85381892. If you submit your manuscript online, do not make a postal contribution. Repeated online submission for the same manuscript is strictly prohibited.

MANUSCRIPT PREPARATION

All contributions should be written in English. All articles must be submitted using word-processing software. All submissions must be typed in 1.5 line spacing and 12 pt. Book Antiqua with ample margins. Style should conform to our house format. Required information for each of the manuscript sections is as follows:

Title page

Title: Title should be less than 12 words.

Running title: A short running title of less than 6 words should be provided.

Authorship: Authorship credit should be in accordance with the standard proposed by ICMJE, based on (1) substantial contributions to conception and design, acquisition of data, or analysis and interpretation of data; (2) drafting the article or revising it critically for important intellectual content; and (3) final approval of the version to be published. Authors should meet conditions 1, 2, and 3.

Institution: Author names should be given first, then the complete name of institution, city, province and postcode. For example, Xu-Chen Zhang, Li-Xin Mei, Department of Pathology, Chengde Medical College, Chengde 067000, Hebei Province, China. One author may be represented from two institutions, for example, George Sgourakis, Department of General, Visceral, and Transplantation Surgery, Essen 45122, Germany; George Sgourakis, 2nd Surgical Department, Korgialenio-Benakio Red Cross Hospital, Athens 15451, Greece

Author contributions: The format of this section should be: Author contributions: Wang CL and Liang L contributed equally to this work; Wang CL, Liang L, Fu JF, Zou CC, Hong F and Wu XM designed the research; Wang CL, Zou CC, Hong F and Wu XM performed the research; Xue JZ and Lu JR contributed new reagents/analytic tools; Wang CL, Liang L and Fu JF analyzed the data; and Wang CL, Liang L and Fu JF wrote the paper.

Supportive foundations: The complete name and number of supportive foundations should be provided, e.g. Supported by National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 30224801

Correspondence to: Only one corresponding address should be provided. Author names should be given first, then author title, affiliation, the complete name of institution, city, postcode, province, country, and email. All the letters in the email should be in lower case. A space interval should be inserted between country name and email address. For example, Montgomery Bissell, MD, Professor of Medicine, Chief, Liver Center, Gastroenterology Division, Uni-

versity of California, Box 0538, San Francisco, CA 94143, United States. montgomery.bissell@ucsf.edu

Telephone and fax: Telephone and fax should consist of +, country number, district number and telephone or fax number, e.g. Telephone: +86-10-85381892 Fax: +86-10-85381893

Peer reviewers: All articles received are subject to peer review. Normally, three experts are invited for each article. Decision on acceptance is made only when at least two experts recommend publication of an article. All peer-reviewers are acknowledged on Express Submission and Peer-review System website.

Abstract

There are unstructured abstracts (no less than 200 words) and structured abstracts. The specific requirements for structured abstracts are as follows:

An informative, structured abstract should accompany each manuscript. Abstracts of original contributions should be structured into the following sections: AIM (no more than 20 words; Only the purpose of the study should be included. Please write the Aim in the form of "To investigate/study/..."), METHODS (no less than 140 words for Original Articles; and no less than 80 words for Brief Articles), RESULTS (no less than 150 words for Original Articles and no less than 120 words for Brief Articles; You should present *P* values where appropriate and must provide relevant data to illustrate how they were obtained, e.g. 6.92 ± 3.86 vs 3.61 ± 1.67 , $P < 0.001$), and CONCLUSION (no more than 26 words).

Key words

Please list 5-10 key words, selected mainly from *Index Medicus*, which reflect the content of the study.

Core tip

Please write a summary of less than 100 words to outline the most innovative and important arguments and core contents in your paper to attract readers.

Text

For articles of these sections, original articles and brief articles, the main text should be structured into the following sections: INTRODUCTION, MATERIALS AND METHODS, RESULTS and DISCUSSION, and should include appropriate Figures and Tables. Data should be presented in the main text or in Figures and Tables, but not in both.

Illustrations

Figures should be numbered as 1, 2, 3, *etc.*, and mentioned clearly in the main text. Provide a brief title for each figure on a separate page. Detailed legends should not be provided under the figures. This part should be added into the text where the figures are applicable. Keeping all elements compiled is necessary in line-art image. Scale bars should be used rather than magnification factors, with the length of the bar defined in the legend rather than on the bar itself. File names should identify the figure and panel. Avoid layering type directly over shaded or textured areas. Please use uniform legends for the same subjects. For example: Figure 1 Pathological changes in atrophic gastritis after treatment. A: ...; B: ...; C: ...; D: ...; E: ...; F: ...; G: ...*etc.* It is our principle to publish high resolution-figures for the E-versions.

Tables

Three-line tables should be numbered 1, 2, 3, *etc.*, and mentioned clearly in the main text. Provide a brief title for each table. Detailed legends should not be included under tables, but rather added into the text where applicable. The information should complement, but not duplicate the text. Use one horizontal line under the title, a second under column heads, and a third below the Table, above any footnotes. Vertical and italic lines should be omitted.

Notes in tables and illustrations

Data that are not statistically significant should not be noted. * $P <$

Instructions to authors

0.05, ^b $P < 0.01$ should be noted ($P > 0.05$ should not be noted). If there are other series of P values, ^c $P < 0.05$ and ^d $P < 0.01$ are used. A third series of P values can be expressed as ^e $P < 0.05$ and ^f $P < 0.01$. Other notes in tables or under illustrations should be expressed as ¹F, ²F, ³F; or sometimes as other symbols with a superscript (Arabic numerals) in the upper left corner. In a multi-curve illustration, each curve should be labeled with ●, ○, ■, □, ▲, △, etc., in a certain sequence.

Acknowledgments

Brief acknowledgments of persons who have made genuine contributions to the manuscript and who endorse the data and conclusions should be included. Authors are responsible for obtaining written permission to use any copyrighted text and/or illustrations.

REFERENCES

Coding system

The author should number the references in Arabic numerals according to the citation order in the text. Put reference numbers in square brackets in superscript at the end of citation content or after the cited author's name. For citation content which is part of the narration, the coding number and square brackets should be typeset normally. For example, "Crohn's disease (CD) is associated with increased intestinal permeability^[1,2]". If references are cited directly in the text, they should be put together within the text, for example, "From references^[19,22-24], we know that..."

When the authors write the references, please ensure that the order in text is the same as in the references section, and also ensure the spelling accuracy of the first author's name. Do not list the same citation twice.

PMID and DOI

Please provide PubMed citation numbers to the reference list, e.g. PMID and DOI, which can be found at <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/sites/entrez?db=pubmed> and <http://www.crossref.org/SimpleTextQuery/>, respectively. The numbers will be used in E-version of this journal.

Style for journal references

Authors: the name of the first author should be typed in bold-faced letters. The family name of all authors should be typed with the initial letter capitalized, followed by their abbreviated first and middle initials. (For example, Lian-Sheng Ma is abbreviated as Ma LS, Bo-Rong Pan as Pan BR). The title of the cited article and italicized journal title (journal title should be in its abbreviated form as shown in PubMed), publication date, volume number (in black), start page, and end page [PMID: 11819634 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.13.5396].

Style for book references

Authors: the name of the first author should be typed in bold-faced letters. The surname of all authors should be typed with the initial letter capitalized, followed by their abbreviated middle and first initials. (For example, Lian-Sheng Ma is abbreviated as Ma LS, Bo-Rong Pan as Pan BR) Book title. Publication number. Publication place: Publication press, Year: start page and end page.

Format

Journals

English journal article (list all authors and include the PMID where applicable)

- 1 **Jung EM**, Clevert DA, Schreyer AG, Schmitt S, Rennert J, Kubale R, Feuerbach S, Jung F. Evaluation of quantitative contrast harmonic imaging to assess malignancy of liver tumors: A prospective controlled two-center study. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 6356-6364 [PMID: 18081224 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.13.6356]

Chinese journal article (list all authors and include the PMID where applicable)

- 2 **Lin GZ**, Wang XZ, Wang P, Lin J, Yang FD. Immunologic effect of Jianpi Yishen decoction in treatment of Pixu-diarhoea. *Shijie Huaren Xiaohua Zazhi* 1999; **7**: 285-287

In press

- 3 **Tian D**, Araki H, Stahl E, Bergelson J, Kreitman M. Signature

of balancing selection in Arabidopsis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2006; In press

Organization as author

- 4 **Diabetes Prevention Program Research Group**. Hypertension, insulin, and proinsulin in participants with impaired glucose tolerance. *Hypertension* 2002; **40**: 679-686 [PMID: 12411462 PMID:2516377 DOI:10.1161/01.HYP.0000035706.28494.09]

Both personal authors and an organization as author

- 5 **Vallancien G**, Emberton M, Harving N, van Moorselaar RJ; Alf-One Study Group. Sexual dysfunction in 1, 274 European men suffering from lower urinary tract symptoms. *J Urol* 2003; **169**: 2257-2261 [PMID: 12771764 DOI:10.1097/01.ju.0000067940.76090.73]

No author given

- 6 21st century heart solution may have a sting in the tail. *BMJ* 2002; **325**: 184 [PMID: 12142303 DOI:10.1136/bmj.325.7357.184]

Volume with supplement

- 7 **Geraud G**, Spierings EL, Keywood C. Tolerability and safety of frovatriptan with short- and long-term use for treatment of migraine and in comparison with sumatriptan. *Headache* 2002; **42** Suppl 2: S93-99 [PMID: 12028325 DOI:10.1046/j.1526-4610.42.s2.7.x]

Issue with no volume

- 8 **Banitt DM**, Kaufer H, Hartford JM. Intraoperative frozen section analysis in revision total joint arthroplasty. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2002; (**401**): 230-238 [PMID: 12151900 DOI:10.1097/00003086-200208000-00026]

No volume or issue

- 9 Outreach: Bringing HIV-positive individuals into care. *HRS-A Careaction* 2002; 1-6 [PMID: 12154804]

Books

Personal author(s)

- 10 **Sherlock S**, Dooley J. Diseases of the liver and biliary system. 9th ed. Oxford: Blackwell Sci Pub, 1993: 258-296

Chapter in a book (list all authors)

- 11 **Lam SK**. Academic investigator's perspectives of medical treatment for peptic ulcer. In: Swabb EA, Azabo S. Ulcer disease: investigation and basis for therapy. New York: Marcel Dekker, 1991: 431-450

Author(s) and editor(s)

- 12 **Breedlove GK**, Schorfheide AM. Adolescent pregnancy. 2nd ed. Wiczorek RR, editor. White Plains (NY): March of Dimes Education Services, 2001: 20-34

Conference proceedings

- 13 **Harnden P**, Joffe JK, Jones WG, editors. Germ cell tumours V. Proceedings of the 5th Germ cell tumours Conference; 2001 Sep 13-15; Leeds, UK. New York: Springer, 2002: 30-56

Conference paper

- 14 **Christensen S**, Oppacher F. An analysis of Koza's computational effort statistic for genetic programming. In: Foster JA, Lutton E, Miller J, Ryan C, Tettamanzi AG, editors. Genetic programming. EuroGP 2002: Proceedings of the 5th European Conference on Genetic Programming; 2002 Apr 3-5; Kinsdale, Ireland. Berlin: Springer, 2002: 182-191

Electronic journal (list all authors)

- 15 Morse SS. Factors in the emergence of infectious diseases. *Emerg Infect Dis* serial online, 1995-01-03, cited 1996-06-05; 1(1): 24 screens. Available from: URL: <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/eid/index.htm>

Patent (list all authors)

- 16 **Pagedas AC**, inventor; Ancel Surgical R&D Inc., assignee. Flexible endoscopic grasping and cutting device and positioning tool assembly. United States patent US 20020103498. 2002 Aug 1

Statistical data

Write as mean \pm SD or mean \pm SE.

Statistical expression

Express *t* test as *t* (in italics), *F* test as *F* (in italics), chi square test as χ^2 (in Greek), related coefficient as *r* (in italics), degree of freedom as ν (in Greek), sample number as *n* (in italics), and probability as *P* (in italics).

Units

Use SI units. For example: body mass, *m* (B) = 78 kg; blood pressure, *p* (B) = 16.2/12.3 kPa; incubation time, *t* (incubation) = 96 h; blood glucose concentration, *c* (glucose) 6.4 ± 2.1 mmol/L; blood CEA mass concentration, *p* (CEA) = 8.6 24.5 $\mu\text{g/L}$; CO₂ volume fraction, 50 mL/L CO₂, not 5% CO₂; likewise for 40 g/L formaldehyde, not 10% formalin; and mass fraction, 8 ng/g, *etc.* Arabic numerals such as 23, 243, 641 should be read 23243641.

The format for how to accurately write common units and quantum numbers can be found at: http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-5836/g_info_20100724204625.htm.

Abbreviations

Standard abbreviations should be defined in the abstract and on first mention in the text. In general, terms should not be abbreviated unless they are used repeatedly and the abbreviation is helpful to the reader. Permissible abbreviations are listed in Units, Symbols and Abbreviations: A Guide for Biological and Medical Editors and Authors (Ed. Baron DN, 1988) published by The Royal Society of Medicine, London. Certain commonly used abbreviations, such as DNA, RNA, HIV, LD50, PCR, HBV, ECG, WBC, RBC, CT, ESR, CSF, IgG, ELISA, PBS, ATP, EDTA, mAb, can be used directly without further explanation.

Italics

Quantities: *t* time or temperature, *c* concentration, *A* area, *l* length, *m* mass, *V* volume.

Genotypes: *gyrA*, *arg 1*, *c myc*, *c fos*, *etc.*

Restriction enzymes: *EcoRI*, *HindI*, *BamHI*, *Kho I*, *Kpn I*, *etc.*

Biology: *H. pylori*, *E. coli*, *etc.*

Examples for paper writing

All types of articles' writing style and requirement will be found in the link: <http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/NavigationInfo.aspx?id=15>

RESUBMISSION OF THE REVISED MANUSCRIPTS

Authors must revise their manuscript carefully according to the revision policies of Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited. The revised version, along with the signed copyright transfer agreement,

responses to the reviewers, and English language Grade A certificate (for non-native speakers of English), should be submitted to the online system via the link contained in the e-mail sent by the editor. If you have any questions about the revision, please send e-mail to esps@wjgnet.com.

Language evaluation

The language of a manuscript will be graded before it is sent for revision. (1) Grade A: priority publishing; (2) Grade B: minor language polishing; (3) Grade C: a great deal of language polishing needed; and (4) Grade D: rejected. Revised articles should reach Grade A.

Copyright assignment form

Please download a Copyright assignment form from http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-5836/g_info_20100724204516.htm.

Responses to reviewers

Please revise your article according to the comments/suggestions provided by the reviewers. The format for responses to the reviewers' comments can be found at: http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-5836/g_info_20100724204306.htm.

Proof of financial support

For papers supported by a foundation, authors should provide a copy of the approval document and serial number of the foundation.

STATEMENT ABOUT ANONYMOUS PUBLICATION OF THE PEER REVIEWERS' COMMENTS

In order to increase the quality of peer review, push authors to carefully revise their manuscripts based on the peer reviewers' comments, and promote academic interactions among peer reviewers, authors and readers, we decide to anonymously publish the reviewers' comments and author's responses at the same time the manuscript is published online.

PUBLICATION FEE

WJO is an international, peer-reviewed, OA online journal. Articles published by this journal are distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution Non-commercial License, which permits use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium and format, provided the original work is properly cited. The use is non-commercial and is otherwise in compliance with the license. Authors of accepted articles must pay a publication fee. Publication fee: 600 USD per article. All invited articles are published free of charge.



百世登

Baishideng®

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited**

Flat C, 23/F., Lucky Plaza, 315-321 Lockhart Road,

Wan Chai, Hong Kong, China

Fax: +852-65557188

Telephone: +852-31779906

E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com

<http://www.wjgnet.com>

